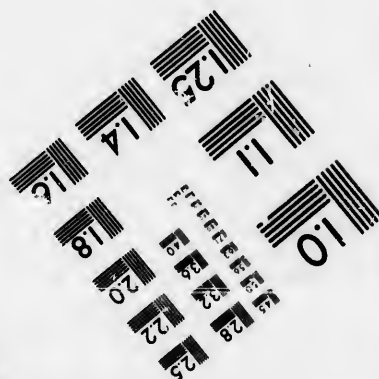
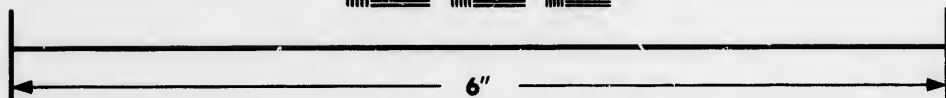
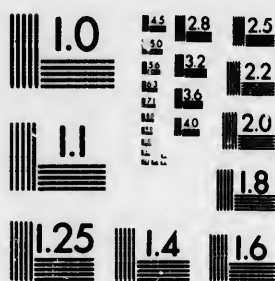


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1985

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

- ☐ Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur
- ☐ Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée
- ☐ Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- ☐ Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque
- ☐ Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- ☐ Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- ☐ Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- ☐ Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents
- ☐ Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion
along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la
distortion le long de la marge intérieure
- ☐ Blank leaves added during restoration may
appear within the text. Whenever possible, these
have been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées
lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,
mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont
pas été filmées.
- ☐ Additional comments:/
Commentaires supplémentaires:

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- ☐ Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur
- ☐ Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées
- ☐ Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- ☒ Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- ☐ Pages detached/
Pages détachées
- ☒ Showthrough/
Transparence
- ☐ Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- ☐ Includes supplementary material/
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- ☐ Only edition available/
Seule édition disponible
- ☐ Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata
slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to
ensure the best possible image/
Les pages totalement ou partiellement
obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure,
etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à
obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

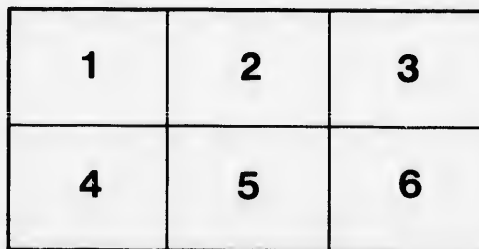
National Library of Canada

The Images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol ➡ (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ▼ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

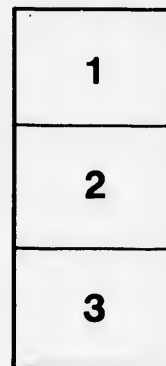
Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Les Images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole ➡ signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ▼ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.



errata
to

pelure,
on à



32X

I

I

AN
INTRODUCTORY
LATIN BOOK,

INTENDED AS AN
ELEMENTARY DRILL-BOOK,
ON THE
INFLECTIONS AND PRINCIPLES OF THE LANGUAGE,

AND AS AN
INTRODUCTION
TO THE
AUTHOR'S GRAMMAR, READER AND LATIN COMPOSITION.

BY
ALBERT HARKNESS.

TORONTO:
THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY (LIMITED),
1888.

PA2087

H3

1888

fu
m
o
j
w
g
n
s
w
t
F
t
n
s
c
t
a
n

t
l
P
b
g
n
v

P R E F A C E.

THE volume now offered to the public is intended to furnish the pupil his first lessons in Latin. As an Elementary Drill-book, it aims to supply a want long felt in our schools. In no stage of a course of classical study is judicious instruction of more vital importance than in that which deals with the forms and elements of the Latin language. To the beginner, every thing is new, and requires minute and careful illustration. He must at the very outset become so familiar with all the grammatical inflections, with their exact form and force, that he will recognize them with promptness and certainty wherever they occur. He must not lose time in uncertain conjecture, where positive knowledge alone will be of any real value. Improvement on this point is one of the pressing needs of our schools. This volume is intended as a contribution to classical education in aid of this particular work. It aims to lighten the burden of the teacher in elementary drill, and to aid him in grounding his pupils in the first elements of the Latin language.

It is the unmistakable verdict of the class-room, that theory and practice must not be separated in the study of language. The true method of instruction will make ample provision for both. On the one hand, the pupil must, by a vigorous use of the memory, become master of all the grammatical forms and rules; while, on the other hand, he must not be denied the luxury of using the knowledge which he is so laboriously acquiring.

To this just and urgent demand of the class-room, the

author's First Latin Book, published fifteen years since, on the basis of Dr. Arnold's works, owed its origin. For the favor with which it was received, and for the generous interest with which it has so long been regarded, the author desires here to express his sincere thanks to the numerous classical instructors whose fidelity in its use has contributed so largely to its success. In the conviction, however, that it has now done its appointed work, he begs leave to offer them the present volume as its successor.

The great objection to most First Latin Books, that, however excellent they may be in themselves, they are not especially adapted to any particular Grammar, and that they accordingly fill the memory of the pupil with rules and statements which must, as far as possible, be unlearned as soon as he passes to his Grammar, is entirely obviated in this volume. All the grammatical portions of it, even to the numbering of the articles, are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar. Indeed, the paradigms are not only the same as in the Grammar, but also occupy the same place on the page; so that even the local associations which the beginner so readily forms with the pages of his first book may be transferred directly to the Grammar.

This work is intended to be complete in itself. It comprises a distinct outline of Latin Grammar, Exercises for Double Translation, Suggestions to the Learner, Notes and Vocabularies. As an Introduction to the author's Grammar, Reader and Latin Composition, it discusses and illustrates precisely those points which are deemed most essential as a preparation for the course of study presented in those works.

PROVIDENCE, R.I., June, 1866.

CONTENTS.



PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
Alphabet	1
Sounds of Letters	2
Exercise I.	3
" II.	4
" III.	5
Syllables	6
Quantity	6
Accentuation	7
Exercise IV.	7

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

Gender	8
Person and Number	9
Cases	9
Declensions	10
First Declension	11
Exercise V.	11
Second Declension	13
Exercise VI.	14
" VII.	16
Third Declension	17
Exercise VIII.	23
" IX.	25
Fourth Declension	26
Exercise X.	27

Fifth Declension	Page.
Exercise XI.	28
	29

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions	30
Exercise XII.	33
Third Declension	35
Exercise XIII.	37
Comparison of Adjectives	38
Exercise XIV.	39
Numeral Adjectives	40
Exercise XV.	42

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns	43
Possessive	44
Demonstrative	44
Relative	45
Interrogative	46
Indefinite	46
Exercise XVI.	47

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

Voices	48
Moods	49
Tenses	50
Numbers	50
Persons	51
Conjugation	51
The Verb Sum	52
Exercise XVII.	56
" XVIII.	57
" XIX.	60
First Conjugation	62
Exercise XX.	66

CONTENTS.

vii

Page.		Page.
28	Exercise XXI.	67
29	" XXII.	69
	" XXIII.	71
	" XXIV.	73
	" XXV.	74
	" XXVI.	75
30	" XXVII.	76
33	Second Conjugation	78
35	Exercise XXVIII.	82
37	" XXIX.	83
38	" XXX.	84
39	" XXXI.	85
40	" XXXII.	86
42	" XXXIII.	87
	" XXXIV.	88
	Third Conjugation	90
	Exercise XXXV.	94
43	" XXXVI.	95
44	" XXXVII.	96
44	" XXXVIII.	97
45	" XXXIX.	97
46	" XL.	98
46	" XLI.	99
47	Fourth Conjugation	100
	Exercise XLII.	104
	" XLIII.	104
	" XLIV.	105
	" XLV.	106
48	" XLVI.	107
49	" XLVII.	107
50	" XLVIII.	108
50	Verbs in 10	110
51	Exercise XLIX.	112

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

Section.		
I.	Classification of Sentences	114
II.	Simple Sentences	115

CHAPTER II.

Section.	SYNTAX OF NOUNS.	Page.
I.	Agreement of Nouns	117
	Exercise L.	117
	" LI.	119
II.	Nominative	120
	Exercise LII.	120
III.	Vocative	121
	Exercise LIII.	121
IV.	Accusative	122
	Exercise LIV.	123
	" LV.	124
	" LVI.	125
V.	Dative	126
	Exercise LVII.	127
	" LVIII.	129
VI.	Genitive	130
	Exercise LIX.	131
	" LX.	132
VII.	Ablative	133
	Exercise LXI.	135
	" LXII.	137
	" LXIII.	138
	" LXIV.	140
VIII.	Cases with Prepositions	141
	Exercise LXV.	142
	Suggestions to the Learner	143
	Latin-English Vocabulary	147
	English-Latin Vocabulary	157

EX

T

T

abl.
acc.
act.
adv.
conj.
dat.
f.
gen.
inde
inter
m.

Page.
117
117
119
120
120
121
121
122
123
124
125
126
127
129
130
131
132
133
135
137
138
140
141
142
143
147
157

EXPLANATION OF REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

THE numerals refer to articles in this work.

The following abbreviations occur:

abl.	ablative.	n.	neuter.
acc.	accusative.	nom.	nominative.
act.	active.	p.	page.
adv.	adverb.	part.	particle.
conj.	conjunction.	pass.	passive.
dat.	dative.	pers.	person.
f.	feminine.	plur., or pl.	plural.
gen.	genitive.	prep.	preposition.
indef.	indefinite.	rel.	relative.
interrog.	interrogative.	sing.	singular.
m.	masculine.	voc.	vocative.

1
lan

2
the
:
cla

1

TH

bu

INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

1. LATIN GRAMMAR treats of the principles of the Latin language.
-

PART FIRST. ORTHOGRAPHY.¹

ALPHABET

2. THE Latin alphabet is the same as the English, with the omission of *w*.

3. CLASSES OF LETTERS. — Letters are divided into two classes: —

I. VOWELS a, e, i, o, u, y.

II. CONSONANTS: —

1. *Liquids* l, m, n, r.

2. *Spirants* h, f, v, j, s.

3. *Mutes*: 1) *Labials* — *lip-letters* . . . b, p, f, v.

2) *Dentals* — *teeth-letters* . . . d, t.

3) *Gutturals* — *throat-letters* . . . c, g, k, q, h.

4. *Double Consonants* x, z.

4. COMBINATIONS OF LETTERS. — We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*, — combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are *ae*, *oe*, *au*.

2. *Double Consonants*, — *x* = *cs* or *gs*; *z* = *ds* or *sd*.

3. *Ch*, *ph*, *th*, are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c*, *p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

¹ Orthography treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

5. **PRONUNCIATION.** — Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, three distinct *Methods* are recognized, generally known as the *English*, the *Roman*, and the *Continental*.¹ For the convenience of the instructor, we add a brief outline of each.²

ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

6. Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds.

7. **LONG SOUNDS.** — Vowels have their long English sounds — **a** as in *fate*, **e** in *mete*, **i** in *pine*, **o** in *note*, **u** in *tube*, **y** in *type* — in the following situations: —

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel: *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables before a vowel or diphthong: *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.³

3. In penultimate⁴ syllables before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*.

4. In unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*: *do-lo'-ris*, *a-gric'-o-la*.

1) **A** unaccented has the sound of a final in *America*: *men'-sa*.

8. **SHORT SOUNDS.** — Vowels have their short English sounds — **a** as in *fat*, **e** in *met*, **i** in *pin*, **o** in *not*, **u** in *tub*, **y** in *myth* — in the following situations: —

¹ Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the continent of Europe has its own method.

² The pupil will, of course, study only the method adopted in the school.

³ In these rules no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *i* in *nilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel. For the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes: thus, *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

⁴ Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: *a'-mat*, *a'-met*, *rex'-it*, *sol*, *con'-sul*, *Te'-thys*; except *post*, *es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res*, *di'-es*, *hos*, *a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3 and 4): *rex'-it*, *bel'-lum*, *rex-e'-runt*, *bel-lo'-rum*.

3. In all accented syllables not penultimate, before one or more consonants: *dom'-i-nus*, *pat'-ri-bus*. But,

1) *A*, *e*, or *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by *e*, *i*, or *y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es*, *a'-cri-a*, *me'-re-o*, *do'-ce-o*.

2) *U*, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus*, *sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

2. SOUNDS OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

9. **Ae** like *e*: *Cae'-sar*, *Daed'-ä-lus*.¹

Oe like *e*: *Oe'-ta*, *Oed'-i-pus*.¹

Au, as in author: *au'-rum*.

Eu . . . neuter: *neu'-ter*.²

3. SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

10. The consonants are pronounced, in general, as in English; but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C**, **G**, **S**, **T**, and **X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus,

1. **C** and **g** are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae*, and *oe*, and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (*se'do*), *ci'-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *cae'-do*, *coe'-pi*, *a'-ge* (*a'-je*), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (*ka'-do*), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*.

2. **S** generally has its English sound, as in son, this: *sa'-cer*, *s7'-dus*.

¹ The diphthong has the *long sound* in *Cae'-sar* and *Oe'-ta*, according to 7, 3, but the *short sound* in *Daed'-ä-lus* (*Ded'-a-lus*) and *Oed'-i-pus* (*Ed'-i-pus*), according to 8, 3, as *e* would be thus pronounced in the same situations.

² *Ei* and *ui*, when used as diphthongs, have the long sound of *i*: *hei*, *cut*.

1) *S* final after *e*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*, is pronounced like *z*: *spes*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hī'ems*, *mons*, *pars*.

3. *T* has its regular English sound as in time: *tī'mor*, *to'tus*.

4. *X* has generally its regular English sound, like *ks*: *rex'-i* (*rek'-si*), *ux'-or* (*uk'-sor*).

12. **C, S, T, X, aspirated.** — Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable, and followed by a vowel, *c*, *s*, *t*, and *x* are aspirated; *c*, *s*, and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, *x* that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (*so'-she-us*), *Al'-si-um* (*Al'-she-um*), *ar'-ti-um* (*ar'-she-um*), *anx'-i-us* (*ank'-she-us*). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (*ca-du'-she-us*), *Sic'-y-on* (*Sish'-e-on*).

4. SYLLABLES.

13. In Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: *mo'-re*, *per-sua'-de*, *men'-sae*.

EXERCISE I.

Pronounce the following words according to the English Method.

1. Men'-sam,¹ men'-sas, men'-sis, men'-sae,² men-sa'-rum.³ 2. Ho'-ram,⁴ ho'-ras, ho'-ris, ho'-rae,⁵ ho-ra'-rum.⁶ 3. Scho'-la,⁷ scho'-lam, scho'-las, scho'-lis, scho'-lae, scho-la'-rum. 4. Co-ro'-na,⁷ co-ro'-nam, co-ro'-nas, co-ro'-nis, co-ro'-nae.⁸ 5. Ci'-vis,⁹ civ'-i-um, civ'-i-bus. 6. Car'-men,¹⁰ car'-mi-nis, car'-mi-ne.¹¹ 7. Rex,¹² re'-gis,¹³ re'-gi, re'-gum.¹³ 8. A'-ci-em,¹⁴ a'-ci-e, a'-ci-es.¹⁵

¹ 8, 2; 8, 1.

² 8, 2; 9; 7, 1.

³ 8, 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

⁴ 7, 3; 8, 1.

⁵ 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

⁶ 7, 3; 8, 1.

⁷ 7, 3; 7, 3, 1).

⁸ 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

⁹ 11, 1 and 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

¹⁰ 11, 1; 8, 2; 8, 1.

¹¹ 8, 3; 7, 3; 7, 1.

¹² 11, 4.

¹³ 11, 1; 7, 3; 8, 1.

¹⁴ 8, 3, 1; 12; 8, 1.

¹⁵ 11, 2, 1).

ROMAN METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

15. The vowel sounds are the following: —

LONG.		SHORT.	
ā	like <i>a</i> in father: <i>ā'-rīs</i> .	ǣ	like <i>a</i> in fast: <i>ǣ'-mēt</i> .
ē	<i>e</i> made: <i>ē'-dī</i> .	ĕ	<i>e</i> net: <i>rĕ'-gēt</i> .
ī	<i>i</i> me: <i>ī'-rī</i> .	ĭ	<i>i</i> divert: <i>vī'-dēt</i> .
ō	<i>o</i> rode: <i>ō'-rās</i> .	ŏ	<i>o</i> romance: <i>mŏ'-nēt</i> .
ū	<i>u</i> do: <i>ū'-nō</i> .	ŭ	<i>u</i> full: <i>sŭ'-mūs</i> .

1. When a short vowel is lengthened by position (21, 2), it retains its short sound: *sunt*, *u* as in *sŭ'-mūs*.

4. **U.** — After *q*, and generally after *g*, *u* has the sound of *w*: *quī* (kwe), *līn'-guā* (līn'-gwa). So also in *cui*, *huī*, *huīc*, and sometimes after *s*: *suā'-dē-o* (swa'-de-o).

2. SOUNDS OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

16. In diphthongs, each vowel retains its own sound: —

ae (for *ai*) like the English *aye* (yes): *men'-sae*.¹

au like *ow* in *how*: *cau'-sā*.

oe (for *oi*) like *oi* in *coin*: *foe'-dūs*.

1. **Ei**, as in *veil*, and **eu**, with the sounds of *e* and *u* combined, occur in a few words: *dein*, *neu'-tēr*.

3. SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

17. Most of the consonants are pronounced nearly as in English; but the following require special notice: —

c like *k* in *king*: *cē'-lēs* (kalas), *cī'-vī* (kewe).

g *g* get: *gē'-nūs*, *rĕ'-gīs*.

j *y* yet: *jā'-cēt* (yaket), *jūs'-sŭm*.

s *s* son: *sā'-cēr*, *sō'-rōr*.

t *t* time: *tī'-mōr*, *tō'-tūs*.

v *w* we: *vā'-dŭm*, *vī'-cī*.

¹ Combining the sounds of *a* and *i*.

4. SYLLABLES.

18. In dividing words into syllables, make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mō'-rē*, *persuā'-dē*, *men'-sae*.

EXERCISE II.

Pronounce the following Words according to the Roman Method.

1. Hō'-rā, hō'-rām, hō'-rās, hō'-rīs, hō'-rae, hō-rā'-rūm.
2. Glō'-rī-ā, glō'-rī-ām, glō'-rī-ae. 3. Dō'-nūm, dō'-nī, dō'-nō, dō'-nā, dō-nō'-rūm, dō'-nis. 4. Cī'-vis, cī'-vī, cī'-vēm, cī'-vēs, cī'-vī-ūm, cī'-vī-būs.

CONTINENTAL METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

19. The Continental Method, as adopted in this country, is almost identical with the Roman, except in the pronunciation of the consonants, in which it more nearly coincides with the English. See 15, 16, 10, 11, 12, and 18.

EXERCISE III.

Pronounce the following Words according to the Continental Method.

1. Hō'-rā, hō'-rām, hō'-rās, hō'-rīs, hō'-rae, hō-rā'-rūm.
2. Glō'-rī-ā, glō'-rī-ām, glō'-rī-ae. 3. Dō'-nūm, dō'-nī, dō'-nō, dō'-nā, dō-nō'-rūm, dō'-nis. 4. Cī'-vis, cī'-vī, cī'-vēm, cī'-vēs, cī'-vī-ūm, cī'-vī-būs.

QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.¹

21. LONG. — A syllable is long in quantity,

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec*.

¹ Common; i.e., sometimes long, and sometimes short.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex*, *mons*.

22. SHORT. — A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *dī'-ēs*, *vi'-ae*, *nī'-hīl*.¹

23. COMMON. — A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally² short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a'-grī*.

1. The signs $\bar{}$, $\acute{}$, \circ, are used to mark quantity, the first denoting that the syllable over which it is placed is *long*, the second that it is *short*, and the third that it is *common*: *ā-grō-rūm*.³

ACCENTUATION.

24. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first: *men'-sa*.

25. Words of more than two syllables are accented⁴ on

¹ No account is taken of the breathing *h*. See 7, 2, note 3.

² A vowel is said to be *naturally* short, when it is short in its own *nature*; i.e., in itself, without reference to its position.

³ By referring to 15 and 19, it will be seen, that, in the Roman Method and in the Continental, *quantity* and *sound* coincide with each other: a vowel long in quantity is long in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is short in sound. But, by referring to 7 and 8, it will be seen, that, in the English Method, the quantity of a vowel does not at all affect its sound, except in determining the accent (25). Hence, in this method, a vowel long in quantity is often short in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is often long in sound. Thus in *rēx*, *ūrbs*, *ārs*, *sōl*, the vowels are all long in quantity; but by 8, 1, they all have the short English sounds: while in *āvē*, *mārē*, the vowels are all short in quantity; but by 7, 1, and 3, they all have the long English sounds. Hence, in pronouncing according to the English Method, determine the place of the accent by the quantity (according to 25), and then determine the sounds of the letters irrespective of quantity (according to 7-12).

⁴ In the subsequent pages, the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

the *Penult*,¹ if that is long in quantity; otherwise on the *Antepenult*:¹ *hō-nō'-rīs*, *con'-sū-līs*.

4. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent; on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: *mōn'-u-ē'-runt*; *mōn'-u-ē-rā'-mūs*; *in-stau'-rā-vē'-runt*.

EXERCISE IV.

*Accent and pronounce the following Words.*²

1. *Cōrōnā*,³ *cōrōnae*, *cōrōnārūm*.⁴ 2. *Gemmae*,⁵ *gemmām*, *gemmārūm*. 3. *Sāpientiae*,⁶ *āmicītiaē*, *justītiaē*, *glōriaē*.⁷
4. *Sāpientiām*, *āmicītiām*, *justītiām*, *glōriām*. 5. *Sāpientiā*, *āmicītiā*, *justītiā*, *glōriā*.

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

37. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

38. The Parts of Speech⁸ are: *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs*, *Adverbs*, *Prepositions*, *Conjunctions*, and *Interjections*.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

39. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicēro*, Cicero; *Rōmā*, Rome; *dōmūs*, house.

¹ Penult, last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

² According to the method adopted in the school.

³ 25; 7, 4, 1).

⁵ 11, 1; 24.

⁷ 11, 1; 8, 3, 1).

⁴ 25, 4.

⁶ 25, 4; 8, 3, 1); 12.

⁸ Thus in Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*.

1. A **PROPER NOUN** is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicero*; *Rōmā*.

2. A **COMMON NOUN** is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vīr*, a man; *equūs*, horse.

40. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case*.

I. GENDER.

41. There are three genders: ¹ *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter*.

1. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

42. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cicero*; *vīr*, man; *rex*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers, Winds, and Months*: *Rhēnūs*, Rhine; *Nōtūs*, south wind; *Martiūs*, March.

II. FEMININES.

1. Names of *Females*: *mūliēr*, woman; *leaenā*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries, Towns, Islands, and Trees*: *Aegyptūs*, Egypt; *Rōmā*, Rome; *Dēlōs*, Delos; *pīrūs*, pear-tree.

II. PERSON AND NUMBER.

44. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one; the plural, more than one.

¹ In English, *gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males*; feminine nouns, *females*; and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females*; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction, according to grammatical rules.

III. CASES.¹

45. The Latin has six cases : —

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>with</i> .

1. OBLIQUE CASES. — The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called the Oblique Cases.

2. LOCATIVE. — The Latin has also a few remnants of another case, called the Locative, denoting the *place in which*.

DECLENSION.

46. STEM AND ENDINGS. — The process by which the several cases of a word are formed is called Declension. It consists in the addition of certain endings to one common base, called the stem.

1. MEANING. — Accordingly each case-form contains two distinct elements: the *stem*, which gives the general meaning of the word, and the *case-ending*, which shows the relation of that meaning to some other word. Thus in *rēg-is*, of a king, the general idea, *king*, is denoted by the stem *reg*; the relation *of*, by the ending *is*.

2. CASES ALIKE. — But certain cases are not distinguished in form.

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative* in *neuters* are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike, except in the singular of nouns in *us* of the second declension (51).²

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

¹ The *case* of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book*. Here the *possessive case* shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

² And in some nouns of Greek origin.

47. FIVE DECLENSIONS. — In Latin there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the endings of the Stem, or of the Genitive Singular, as follows : —

	STEM-ENDINGS.	GENITIVE ENDINGS.
DEC. I.	a	ae
II.	o	i
III.	i or consonant.	is
IV.	u	ūs
V.	e	ēi

FIRST DECLENSION. — A NOUNS.

48. Nouns of the first declension end in
ā and *ē*, *feminine*; *ās* and *ēs*, *masculine*.¹

Nouns in *a* are declined as follows : —

SINGULAR.			
Example.	Meaning.	Case-Endings.	
<i>Nom.</i> mens ā ,	<i>a table,</i>	ā	
<i>Gen.</i> mens ae ,	<i>of a table,</i>	ae	
<i>Dat.</i> mens ae ,	<i>to, for, a table,</i>	ae	
<i>Acc.</i> mens ām ,	<i>a table,</i>	ām	
<i>Voc.</i> mens ā ,	<i>O table,</i>	ā	
<i>Abl.</i> mens ā ,	<i>with, from, by, a table,</i>	ā	
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i> mens ae ,	<i>tables,</i>	ae	
<i>Gen.</i> mens arūm ,	<i>of tables,</i>	arūm	
<i>Dat.</i> mens is ,	<i>to, for, tables,</i>	is	
<i>Acc.</i> mens ās ,	<i>tables,</i>	ās	
<i>Voc.</i> mens ae ,	<i>O tables,</i>	ae	
<i>Abl.</i> mens is ,	<i>with, from, by, tables,</i>	is.	

1. STEM. — In nouns of the First Declension, the stem ends in *a*.

2. In the PARADIGM, observe,

1) That the stem is *mensa*, and that the Nominative Singular is the same.

¹ That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *e* are feminine, and those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

2) That the several cases are distinguished from each other by their case-endings.

3) That these case-endings contain the stem-ending *a*.

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE. — Like *mensa* decline: —
Ala, wing; *āqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune.

4. LOCATIVE. — Names of towns, and a very few other words, have a Locative Singular in *ae*: *Rōmae*, at Rome; *militiae*, in war.

EXERCISE V.

I. Vocabulary.

Amicitia, ae, ¹ f. ²	friendship.
Corōnā, ae, f.	crown.
Gemmā, ae, f.	gem.
Glōriā, ae, f.	glory.
Hōrā, ae, f.	hour.
Justitiā, ae, f.	justice.
Sāpientiā, ae, f.	wisdom.
Schōlā, ae, f.	school.

II. Translate into English.

1. Corōnā,³ corōnā, corōnae,⁴ corōnam, coronārum, corōnis, corōnas. 2. Gemmā, gemmā, gemmae, gemmam, gemmārum, gemmis, gemmas. 3. Sāpientiā, amicitia, justitiā, gloriā. 4. Sāpientiam, amicitiam, justitiam, gloriam. 5. Sāpientiā, amicitia, justitiā, gloriā. 6. Scholārum, horārum. 7. Scholis, horis. 8. Scholas, horas.

¹ The ending *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive: *amicitia*; Gen., *amicitiae*.

² Gender is indicated in the vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

³ As the Latin has no article, a noun may, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated (1) without the article; as, *corōna*, crown; (2) with the indefinite article *a* or *an*; as, *corōna*, a crown; (3) with the definite article *the*; as, *corōna*, the crown.

⁴ When the same Latin form may be found in two or more cases, the pupil is expected to give the meaning for each case. Thus *corōnae* may be in the Genitive or Dative Singular, or in the Nominative or Vocative Plural.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Friendship, friendships. 2. Of¹ friendship, of friendships. 3. To friendship, to friendships. 4. By friendship, by friendships. 5. Justice, by justice, of justice, to justice. 6. Wisdom, glory. 7. With wisdom, with glory. 8. To wisdom, to glory. 9. Of wisdom, of glory. 10. Of a² crown, of a gem. 11. With the² crowns, with the gems.

SECOND DECLENSION. — O NOUNS.

51. Nouns of the second declension end in

ēr, ir, ūs, and **os**, masculine; **ŭm**, and **on**, neuter.

Nouns in *er, ir, us*, and *um*, are declined as follows: —

Servus, slave. *Puer*, boy. *Ager*, field. *Templum*, temple.

SINGULAR.

N. serv ŭs	pu ēr	āg ēr	templ ŭm
G. serv ī	pu ērī	āgr ī	templ ī
D. serv ō	pu ērō	agr ō	templ ō
A. serv ŭm	pu ērŭm	agr ŭm	templ ŭm
V. serv ē	pu ēr	ag ēr	templ ŭm
A. serv ō	pu ērō	agr ō	templ ō

PLURAL.

N. serv ī	pu ērī	āgr ī	templ ā
G. serv ōrŭm	pu ērōrŭm	agr ōrŭm	templ ōrŭm
D. serv īs	pu ērīs	agr īs	templ īs
A. serv ōs	pu ērōs	agr ōs	templ ā
V. serv ī	pu ērī	agr ī	templ ā
A. serv īs	pu ērīs	agr īs	templ īs

1. STEM. — In nouns of the Second Declension, the stem ends in **o**.

2. In the PARADIGMS, observe,

¹ The pupil will observe that the English prepositions, *of, to, by*, may be rendered into Latin by simply changing the ending of the word. Thus *friendship*, *amicitia*; *of friendship*, *amicitiae*.

² The pupil will remember that the English articles, *a, an*, and *the*, are not to be rendered into Latin at all. *Crown, a crown*, and *the crown*, are all rendered into Latin by the same word.

- 1) That the stems are *servo*, *puĕro*; *agro*, and *templo*.
- 2) That the stem-ending *o* becomes *u* in the endings *us* and *um*.
- 3) That the case-endings, including the stem-ending *o*, are as follows:—

SINGULAR.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> ūs ¹	ūm
<i>Gen.</i> i	i
<i>Dat.</i> ō	ō
<i>Acc.</i> ūm	ūm
<i>Voc.</i> ē ¹	ūm
<i>Abl.</i> ō	ō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> i	ă
<i>Gen.</i> ōrūm	ōrūm
<i>Dat.</i> is	is
<i>Acc.</i> ōs	ă
<i>Voc.</i> i	ă
<i>Abl.</i> is.	is.

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE. — Like *SERVUS*: *dōmīnus*, master. Like *PUER*: *gēner*, son-in-law. Like *AGER*: *māgister*, master. Like *TEMPLUM*: *bellum*, war.

6. LOCATIVE. — Names of towns, and a few other words, have a Locative Singular in *i*: *Cōrinthi*, at Corinth; *hūmi*, on the ground.

EXERCISE VI.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Dōnūm</i> , i, n.	<i>gift</i> .
<i>Gēner</i> , <i>gēnerī</i> , m.	<i>son-in-law</i> .
<i>Libĕr</i> , <i>librī</i> , m.	<i>book</i> .
<i>Ocūlus</i> , i, m.	<i>eye</i> .
✓ <i>Praeceptūm</i> , i, n.	<i>rule, precept</i> .
<i>Sōcĕr</i> , <i>sōcĕrī</i> , m.	<i>father-in-law</i> .
<i>Tŷrannūs</i> , i, m.	<i>tyrant</i> .
<i>Verbūm</i> , i, n.	<i>word</i> .

¹ The endings of the Nominative and Vocative Singular are wanting in nouns in *er*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Ocul^{us}, oculⁱ, ocul^o, ocul^{um}, ocul^e, ocul^{orum}, ocul^{is}, ocul^{os}. 2. Soc^{er}, soc^{eri}, soc^{ero}, soc^{erum}, soc^{erorum}, soc^{eris}, soc^{eros}. 3. Servⁱ, tyrannⁱ. 4. Pu^{eri}, gen^{eri}. 5. Agri, libri. 6. Templⁱ, donⁱ. 7. Serv^o, tyrann^o. 8. Pu^{erum}, gen^{erum}. 9. Agr^{orum}, libr^{orum}. 10. Templ^a, dona. 11. Serv^{um}, serv^{os}. 12. Gen^{eri}, gener^{orum}. 13. Agri, agr^{orum}. 14. Don^o, don^{is}. 15. Verbi, praeceptⁱ.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The slave, the slaves. 2. For the slave, for the slaves. 3. Of the slave, of the slaves. 4. Of the father-in-law, of the son-in-law. 5. Of the fathers-in-law, of the sons-in-law. 6. For the fathers-in-law, for the sons-in-law. 7. The boy, the field. 8. The boys, the fields. 9. The gift, the gifts. 10. With the gift, with the gifts.

SECOND DECLENSION. — CONTINUED.

RULE II. — Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE:¹

Cluilius rex moritur, *Cluilius the king dies*. — Liv. Urbes Carthago atque Numantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia*. — Cic.

I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING.

In parsing a Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Decline² it.

¹ A noun or pronoun used to explain or identify another noun or pronoun denoting the same person or thing, is called an *appositive*; as, *Cluilius rex*, Cluilius the king. Here *rex*, the king, is the appositive, showing the rank or office of Cluilius, — *Cluilius the king*. The noun or pronoun to which the appositive is added — *Cluilius* in the example — is called the *subject* of the appositive.

² Adjectives should also be compared (162).

3. Give its Gender, Number, Case, &c.
4. Give its Syntax,¹ and the Rule for it.

MODEL.

Artēmisiā rēgīnā, *Artemisia the queen.*

Regina is a noun (39) of the First Declension (48), as it has *ae* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *regīna* (48, 1). Singular: *regīna, regīnae, regīnae, regīnam, regīnā, regīnā*. Plural: *regīnae, regīnārum, regīnis, regīnas, regīnae, regīnis*. It is of the Feminine gender, as the names of females are feminine by 42, II. 1. It is in the Nominative Singular, in apposition with its subject *Artemisia*, with which it agrees in *case*, according to Rule II.: "An Appositive agrees with its Subject in *CASE*."

EXERCISE VII.

I. Vocabulary.

Cāiūs, ii, m.	<i>Caius</i> , a proper name.
Filiā, ae, f.	<i>daughter</i> .
Hastā, ae, f.	<i>spear</i> .
Pisistrātūs, i, m.	<i>Pisistratus</i> , Tyrant of Athens.
Rāmūs, i, m.	<i>branch</i> .
Rēgīnā, ae, f.	<i>queen</i> .
Tulliā, ae, f.	<i>Tullia</i> , a proper name.

II. Translate into English.

1. Ramus, hastā. 2. Rami, hastae. 3. Ramo, hastae. 4. Ramum, hastam. 5. Ramo, hastā. 6. Ramōrum, hastārum. 7. Ramis, hastis. 8. Ramos, hastas. 9. Tyranni, tyrannōrum. 10. Verbum, verba. 11. Verbo, verbis. 12. Templum, templa. 13. Templi, templōrum. 14. Pisistrātus tyrannus.² 15. Pisistrāti tyranni. 16. Pisistrāto tyranno. 17. Tulliā filiā. 18. Tulliae filiae.

¹ By the *Syntax* of a word is meant the grammatical construction of it. Thus we give the *Syntax* of *regīna*, under the Model, by stating that it is in apposition with its subject, *Artemisia*.

² *Tyrannus* is an appositive, in the Nominative, in agreement with its subject, *Pisistrātus*, according to Rule II. 363.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The tyrant, the crown. 2. The tyrants, the crowns.
3. Of the tyrant, of the crown. 4. Of the tyrants, of the crowns.
5. To the tyrant, to the crown. 6. To the tyrants, to the crowns.
7. The book, the books. 8. With the book, with the books.
9. Of Pisistratus, for Pisistratus. 10. Of the queen, for the queen.
11. Caius the slave. 12. Of Caius the slave. 13. For Caius the slave.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CONSONANT AND I NOUNS.

55. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.

56. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes : —

I. Nouns whose stem ends in a *Consonant*.

II. Nouns whose stem ends in **I**.

CLASS I. — CONSONANT STEMS.

57. STEMS ENDING IN A LABIAL : **B** or **P**.

Princeps, m.,¹ a leader, chief. Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.

N. princeps,	a leader,	s
G. principis,	of a leader,	is
D. principī,	to, for, a leader,	i
A. principem,	a leader,	em
V. princeps,	O leader,	s
A. principē,	with, from, by, a leader,	ē

PLURAL.

N. principes,	leaders,	ēs
G. principum,	of leaders,	um
D. principibus,	to, for, leaders,	ibus
A. principes,	leaders,	ēs
V. principes,	O leaders,	ēs
A. principibus,	with, from, by, leaders,	ibus.

¹ M stands for masculine, F for feminine, and N for neuter.

1. STEM AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In this Paradigm observe that the stem is *princĕp*, modified before an additional syllable to *prinĕp*, and that the case-endings are appended to the stem without change.

2. VARIABLE RADICAL VOWEL. — In the final syllable of dissyllabic consonant stems, short *e* or *i* generally takes the form of *ĕ* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., and that of *ī* in all the other cases. Thus *princeps*, *princĭpis*, and *jūdex*, *jūdicis* (59), both alike have *e* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., and *i* in all the other cases, though in *princeps*, the original form of the radical vowel is *e*, and in *jūdex* *i*.

58. STEMS ENDING IN A DENTAL: **D** OR **T**.

Lapis, M., *stone*.

Aetas, F., *age*.

Miles, M., *soldier*.

SINGULAR.

N. lāpis	aetās	milēs
G. lapidīs	aetātīs	militīs
D. lapidī	aetātī	militī
A. lapidēm	aetātēm	militēm
V. lapis	aetās	milēs
A. lapidē	aetātē	militē

PLURAL.

N. lapidēs	aetātēs	militēs
G. lapidūm	aetātūm	militūm
D. lapidībūs	aetatībūs	militībūs
A. lapidēs	aetātēs	militēs
V. lapidēs	aetātēs	militēs
A. lapidībūs.	aetatībūs.	militībūs.

Nepos, M., *grandson*.

Virtus, F., *virtue*.

Caput, N., *head*.

SINGULAR.

N. nēpōs	virtūs	cāpūt
G. nepōtīs	virtūtīs	capitīs
D. nepōtī	virtutī	capitī
A. nepōtēm	virtutēm	capūt
V. nepōs	virtūs	capūt
A. nepōtē	virtutē	capitē

	PLURAL.	
<i>N. nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capitā</i>
<i>G. nepōtūm</i>	<i>virtūtūm</i>	<i>capitūm</i>
<i>D. nepotībūs</i>	<i>virtutībūs</i>	<i>capitībūs</i>
<i>A. nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capitā</i>
<i>V. nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capitā</i>
<i>A. nepotībūs.</i>	<i>virtutībūs.</i>	<i>capitībūs.</i>

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In these Paradigms observe,
- 1) That the stems are *lāpīd*, *aetāt*, *mīlīt*, *nēpōt*, *virtūt*, and *cāpūt*.
 - 2) That *mīlēs* has a variable vowel, *ē*, *ī*, and *cāpūt*, *ū*, *ī*.
 - 3) That the dental *d* or *t* is dropped before *s*: *lāpis* for *lapids*, *aetās* for *aetats*, *mīlēs* for *mīlets*, *virtūs* for *virtuts*.
 - 4) That the case-endings, except in the *neuter*, *cāpūt* (46, 2), are the same as those given above. See 57.
 - 5) That *cāpūt* has no case-ending in the *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Voc.* *Sing.*, but has *ā* in the *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Voc. Plur.*

 59. STEMS ENDING IN A GUTTURAL: **C** OR **G**.

<i>Rex, M.,</i> <i>king.</i>	<i>Judex, M. & F.,</i> <i>judge.</i>	<i>Radix, F.,</i> <i>root.</i>	<i>Dux, M. & F.,</i> <i>leader.</i>
---------------------------------	---	-----------------------------------	--

SINGULAR.

<i>N. rex</i>	<i>judex</i>	<i>rādix</i>	<i>dux</i>
<i>G. regīs</i>	<i>judicīs</i>	<i>radicīs</i>	<i>dūcīs</i>
<i>D. regī</i>	<i>judicī</i>	<i>radicī</i>	<i>ducī</i>
<i>A. regēm</i>	<i>judicēm</i>	<i>radicēm</i>	<i>ducēm</i>
<i>V. rex</i>	<i>judex</i>	<i>radix</i>	<i>dux</i>
<i>A. regē</i>	<i>judicē</i>	<i>radicē</i>	<i>ducē</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N. regēs</i>	<i>judicēs</i>	<i>radicēs</i>	<i>ducēs</i>
<i>G. regūm</i>	<i>judicūm</i>	<i>radicūm</i>	<i>ducūm</i>
<i>D. regībūs</i>	<i>judicībūs</i>	<i>radicībūs</i>	<i>ducībūs</i>
<i>A. regēs</i>	<i>judicēs</i>	<i>radicēs</i>	<i>ducēs</i>
<i>V. regēs</i>	<i>judicēs</i>	<i>radicēs</i>	<i>ducēs</i>
<i>A. regībūs.</i>	<i>judicībūs.</i>	<i>radicībūs.</i>	<i>ducībūs.</i>

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In the Paradigms, observe,
- 1) That the stems are *rēg*, *judic*, *radic*, and *dūc* — *judic* with the variable vowel — *ī*, *ē*. See 57, 2.
 - 2) That the case-endings are those given in 57.

3) That **s** in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. unites with *c* or *g* of the stem, and forms *x*.

60. STEMS ENDING IN A LIQUID: **L, M, N, OR R.**

Sol, M., <i>sun.</i>	Consul, M., <i>consul.</i>	Passer, M., <i>sparrow.</i>	Pater, M., <i>father.</i>
SINGULAR.			
N. sol	consul	passer	pater
G. solis	consulis	passeris	pateris
D. soli	consuli	passeri	patri
A. solēm	consulēm	passerēm	paterēm
V. sol	consul	passer	pater
A. solē	consulē	passerē	paterē
PLURAL.			
N. solēs	consulēs	passerēs	paterēs
G. solibūs	consulūm	passerūm	paterūm
D. solibūs	consulibūs	passeribūs	pateribūs
A. solēs	consulēs	passerēs	paterēs
V. solēs	consulēs	passerēs	paterēs
A. solibūs.	consulibūs.	passeribūs.	pateribūs.
Pastor, M., <i>shepherd.</i>	Leo, M., <i>lion.</i>	Virgo, F., <i>maiden.</i>	Carmen, N., <i>song.</i>

SINGULAR.			
N. pastor	leo	virgo	carmen
G. pastoris	leonis	virginis	carminis
D. pastori	leoni	virgini	carmini
A. pastorem	leonem	virginem	carmen
V. pastor	leo	virgo	carmen
A. pastore	leonē	virginē	carminē
PLURAL.			
N. pastores	leonēs	virginēs	carmina
G. pastorum	leonum	virginum	carminum
D. pastoribūs	leonibūs	virginibūs	carminibūs
A. pastores	leonēs	virginēs	carmina
V. pastores	leonēs	virginēs	carmina
A. pastoribūs.	leonibūs.	virginibūs.	carminibūs.

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In the Paradigms, observe,

1) That the stems are *sol*, *consul*, *passer*, *pater*, *pastor*, *leo*, *virgo*, and *carmen*.

2) That *virgo* has the variable vowel, *o*, *i*; and *carmen*, *e*, *i*.

3) That in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. **s**, the usual case-ending for masculine and feminine nouns, is omitted, and that in those cases the stem *pastōr* shortens **o**, while *leōn* and *virgōn* drop **n**.

61. STEMS ENDING IN **S**.

Flos, m., <i>flower.</i>	Jus, n., <i>right.</i>	Opus, n., <i>work.</i>	Corpus, n., <i>body.</i>
SINGULAR.			
N. <i>flos</i>	<i>jūs</i>	<i>ōpūs</i>	<i>corpūs</i>
G. <i>flōris</i>	<i>jūris</i>	<i>opēris</i>	<i>corpōris</i>
D. <i>florī</i>	<i>jurī</i>	<i>opērī</i>	<i>corpōrī</i>
A. <i>florēm</i>	<i>jus</i>	<i>opūs</i>	<i>corpūs</i>
V. <i>flos</i>	<i>jus</i>	<i>opūs</i>	<i>corpūs</i>
A. <i>florē</i>	<i>jurē</i>	<i>opērē</i>	<i>corpōrē</i>
PLURAL.			
N. <i>florēs</i>	<i>jurā</i>	<i>opērā</i>	<i>corpōrā</i>
G. <i>florūm</i>	<i>jurūm</i>	<i>opērūm</i>	<i>corpōrūm</i>
D. <i>florībūs</i>	<i>jurībūs</i>	<i>opērībūs</i>	<i>corpōrībūs</i>
A. <i>florēs</i>	<i>jurā</i>	<i>opērā</i>	<i>corpōrā</i>
V. <i>florēs</i>	<i>jurā</i>	<i>opērā</i>	<i>corpōrā</i>
A. <i>florībūs.</i>	<i>jurībūs.</i>	<i>opērībūs.</i>	<i>corpōrībūs.</i>

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In the Paradigms observe,
- 1) That the stems are *flos*, *jus*, *ōpēs*, and *corpōs*.
- 2) That *ōpūs* has the variable vowel, **ē**, **ū**, and *corpūs*, **ō**, **ū**.
- 3) That **s** of the stem becomes **r** between two vowels: *flos*, *flōris* (for *flōsis*).
- 4) That the Nominative and Vocative Singular omit the case-ending. See 60, 1, 3).

RULE XVI. — Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive: ¹

Cātōnis orātiōnes, *Cato's orations*. — Cic. *Castra hostium*, *the camp of the enemy*. — Liv. *Mors Hāmilcāris*, *the death of Hamilcar*. — Liv.

¹ The Appositive (303, p. 15) and this qualifying Genitive resemble each other in the fact that they both qualify the meaning of

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Cātōnīs ōrātiōnēs, *Cato's orations.*

Cātōnis is a proper noun, as it is the name of a person (39, 1). It is of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (47); of Class I., as its stem ends in a consonant (56, I.): STEM, *Cātōn*: Nom. *Cato* (*n* dropped). Singular:¹ *Cato*, *Cātōnis*, *Cātōni*, *Cātōnem*, *Cato*, *Cātōne*. It is of the Masculine gender, as the names of males are masculine by 42, I. 1. It is in the Genitive Singular, depending upon *ōrātiōnes*, according to Rule XVI.: "Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive."

EXERCISE VIII.

I. Vocabulary.

✓ Cīcērō, Cīcērōnīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Cicero</i> , the Roman orator.
Consūl, consūlīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>consul</i> . ²
✓ Exsūl, exsūlīs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	<i>exile</i> .
Frāter, frātrīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>brother</i> .
Lex, lēgis, <i>f.</i>	<i>law</i> .
Nōmēn, nōmīnīs, <i>n.</i>	<i>name</i> .
Ōrātiō, ōrātiōnīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>oration</i> , <i>speech</i> .
Ōrātōr, ōrātōrīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>orator</i> .
Victōr, victōrīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>victor</i> , <i>conqueror</i> .

another noun: *Cluilius rex*, *Cluilius* the king; *Cātōnis ōrātiōnes*, *Cato's orations*, or the orations of *Cato*. Here the Appositive *rex* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *Cluilius*, by showing *what* *Cluilius* is meant, — *Cluilius the king*: in a similar manner, the Genitive *Cātōnis* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *ōrātiōnes*, by showing *what* orations are meant, — *the orations of Cato*. Yet the Appositive and the Genitive are readily distinguished by the fact that the former qualifies a noun denoting the *same* person or thing as itself, while the Genitive qualifies a noun denoting a *different* person or thing. Thus, in the examples above, *Cluilius* and the Appositive *rex* denote the *same* person; while *ōrātiōnes* and the Genitive *Cātōnis* denote entirely *different* objects.

¹ As *Cato* is the name of a person, the Plural is seldom used.

² The *consuls* were joint presidents of the Roman commonwealth. They were elected annually, and were two in number.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Princēpis, princēpum. 2. Princēpem, princēpes. 3. Miles, milites. 4. Milliti, militibus. 5. Caput, capita. 6. Capite, capitibus. 7. Rex, reges. 8. Regis, regum. 9. Consūli, consulibus. 10. Leo, leōnis, leōnes. 11. Virgo, virgīnis, virgīnes. 12. Solis, solem, soles. 13. Solibus, consulibus. 14. Patri, pastōri. 15. Patres, pastōres. 16. Carmen, carmina. 17. Opēris, corpōris. 18. Cicerōnis¹ oratio. 19. Cicerōnis oratiōnes. 20. Oratiōne consulis.

 III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The exile, the exiles. 2. For the exile, for the exiles. 3. Of an exile, of the exiles. 4. The shepherd, the orator. 5. Of shepherds, of orators. 6. Shepherds, orators. 7. Of a shepherd, of an orator. 8. A song, a name. 9. Songs, names. 10. Of songs, of names. 11. Father, brother. 12. To the father, to the brother. 13. Kings, laws. 14. Of the king, of the law. 15. Of the kings, of the laws. 16. For the conqueror, of the conqueror. 17. The brother of the conqueror.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS II. — I STEMS.

62. STEMS ENDING IN **I**. — *Nouns in is, — Abl. Sing. in i, or in i or ě.*

Tussis, F., cough.	Turris, F., tower.	Ignis, M., fire.	Case-Endings.
-----------------------	-----------------------	---------------------	---------------

SINGULAR.

N. tussis	turris	ignis	.is
G. tussis	turris	ignis	is
D. tussi	turri	igni	i
A. tussim	turrim, ěm	ignem	im, ěm
V. tussis	turris	ignis	is
A. tussi	turri, ě	igni, ě	i, ě

¹ Cicerōnis is in the Genitive, and qualifies the meaning of oratio, according to Rule XVI., 395.

PLURAL.

N. tussēs	turrēs	ignēs	ēs
G. tussīūm	turriūm	igniūm	iūm
D. tussībūs	turribūs	ignībūs	ībūs
A. tussēs, is	turrēs, is	ignēs, is	ēs, is
V. tussēs	turrēs	ignēs	ēs
A. tussībūs.	turribūs.	ignībūs.	ībūs.

1. PARADIGMS. — Observe,

1) That the stems are *tussi*, *turri*, and *igni*.

2) That the case-endings here given include the stem-ending *i*, which disappears in certain cases.

3) That these Paradigms differ in declension only in the Accusative and Ablative Singular.

63. STEMS ENDING IN **I**. — Neuters in **ē**, **al**, and **ar**.

Mare, sea.	Animal, animal.	Calcar, spur.	Case-Endings.
---------------	--------------------	------------------	---------------

SINGULAR.

N. mārē	ānīmāl	calcār	ē — ¹
G. marīs	animālīs	calcārīs	īs
D. marī	animālī	calcārī	ī
A. mārē	ānīmāl	calcār	ē — ¹
V. marē	animāl	calcār	ē — ¹
A. marī	animālī	calcārī	ī

PLURAL.

N. mariā	animaliā	calcariā	iā
G. mariūm	animaliūm	calcariūm	iūm
D. marībūs	animalībūs	calcariībūs	ībūs
A. mariā	animaliā	calcariā	iā
V. mariā	animaliā	calcariā	iā
A. marībūs.	animalībūs.	calcariībūs.	ībūs.

1. PARADIGMS. — Observe,

1) That the stem-ending *i* is changed to *e* in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of *māre*, and dropped in the same cases of *ānīmāl* (for *animāle*) and *calcār* (for *calcāre*).

2) That the case-endings include the stem-ending *i*.

¹ The dash denotes that the case-ending is sometimes wanting.

64. STEMS ENDING IN **I**. — *Nouns in is, es, and s (x) preceded by a Consonant, — Abl. Sing. in ě.*

Hostis, M. & F., enemy.	Nubes, F., cloud.	Urbs, F., city.	Arx, F., citadel.
----------------------------	----------------------	--------------------	----------------------

SINGULAR.

N. host is	nūb ēs	urb s	arx ¹
G. host is	nub is	urb is	arc is
D. host i	nub i	urb i	arc i
A. host ēm	nub ēm	urb ēm	arc ēm
V. host is	nub ēs	urb s	arx
A. host ě	nub ě	urb ě	arc ě

PLURAL.

N. host ēs	nub ēs	urb ēs	arc ēs
G. host iūm	nub iūm	urb iūm	arc iūm
D. host ibūs	nub ibūs	urb ibūs	arc ibūs
A. host ēs, is	nub ēs, is	urb ēs, is	arc ēs, is
V. host ēs	nub ēs	urb ēs	arc ēs
A. host ibūs.	nub ibūs.	urb ibūs.	arc ibūs.

1. STEMS. — These Paradigms show a combination of i-stems and consonant stems: *hosti, host*; *urbi, urb*; *arci, arc*. The stem of *nubēs* seems to be *nabēs, nabi, nab*.

67. CASE-ENDINGS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.

CONSONANT STEMS.		I-STEMS.	
Masc. & Fem.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
N. s — ²	— ²	is, ċs, s	ċ — ²
G. is	is	is	is
D. i	i	i	i
A. ěm	—	īm, ěm	ě —
V. s	—	is, ěs, s	ě —
A. ě	ě	i, ċ	i

¹ X in *arx* = *cs*, — *c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nominative ending.

² The dash denotes that the case-ending is wanting.

PLURAL.			
N. <i>ēs</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>ēs</i>	<i>iā</i>
G. <i>ūm</i>	<i>ūm</i>	<i>iūm</i>	<i>iūm</i>
D. <i>ibūs</i>	<i>ibūs</i>	<i>ibūs</i>	<i>ibūs</i>
A. <i>ēs</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>ēs, is</i>	<i>iā</i>
V. <i>ēs</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>ēs</i>	<i>iā</i>
A. <i>ibūs.</i>	<i>ibūs.</i>	<i>ibūs.</i>	<i>ibūs.</i>

99. Nouns of the third declension in

o, or, os, er, and es increasing in the genitive,¹

are masculine: *sermo*, discourse; *dōlōr*, pain; *mōs*, custom; *aggēr*, mound; *pēs*, genitive *pēdis*, foot.

105. Nouns of the third declension in

as, is, ys, x, es not increasing in the genitive, and **s** preceded by a consonant,

are feminine: *aetās*, age; *nāvīs*, ship; *chlāmŷs*, cloak; *pax*, peace; *nūbēs*, cloud; *urbs*, city.

111. Nouns of the third declension in

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us,

are neuter: *poēmā*, poem; *mārē*, sea; *lāc*, milk; *ānīmāl*, animal; *carmēn*, song; *cāpūt*, head; *corpūs*, body.

RULE XXXII. — Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions.²

Ad āmicum scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* — Cic. In cūri-

¹ That is, having more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative.

² The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *in Italia esse*, to be in Italy; *ante me*, before me. Here *in* and *ante* are prepositions. In the Vocabularies, each preposition, as it occurs, will be marked as such; and the case which may be used with it will be specified. It has not been thought advisable, at this early stage of the course, to burden the memory of the learner with a list of prepositions and their cases.

am, into the senate-house. — Liv. In *Italiā*,¹ in *Italy*. — Nep. Pro castris, before the camp.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Ad amicūm, To a friend.

Amicum is a noun of the Second Declension (51), as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *amico* (51, 1). Singular: *amicus*, *amici*, *amico*, *amicum*, *amice*, *amico*. Plural: *amici*, *amicorum*, *amicis*, *amicos*, *amici*, *amicis*. It is of the Masculine gender by 51, is in the Accusative Singular, and is used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII.: "The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions." The Accusative is used with *ad*.

EXERCISE IX.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Ad</i> , prep. with acc.	<i>to</i> , towards.
<i>Avīs</i> , <i>āvīs</i> , <i>f</i> .	<i>bird</i> .
<i>Civīs</i> , <i>civīs</i> , <i>m. and f</i> .	<i>citizen</i> .
<i>Civitas</i> , <i>civitātis</i> , <i>f</i> .	<i>state</i> .
<i>Contrā</i> , prep. with acc.	<i>against</i> , contrary to.
<i>Mors</i> , <i>mortis</i> , <i>f</i> .	<i>death</i> .
<i>Pax</i> , <i>pācis</i> , <i>f</i> .	<i>peace</i> .

II. Translate into English.

1. Nubis, nubium. 2. Nubem, nubes. 3. Avis, aves.
4. Avi, avibus. 5. Urbs, urbes. 6. Urbi, urbibus. 7. Nubēs, milēs.
8. Nubis, militis. 9. Nubem, militem.
10. Rex, judex. 11. Regis, judicis. 12. Reges, iudices.
13. Civitas, civitates. 14. Virtus, virtutes. 15. Mors regis.
16. Morte regis. 17. Mortes regum. 18. Virtus judicis.
19. Pacis gloriā. 20. Ad gloriā.² 21. Contra regem.
22. Ad turrim. 23. Contra hostes.

¹ Here the Ablative *Italiā* is used with *in*, though, in the second example, the Accusative *curiam* is used with the same preposition. The rule is, that the Latin preposition *in* is used with the Accusative when it means *into*, and with the Ablative when it means *in*.

² The Accusative *gloriā* is here used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII. 432.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The citizen, to the citizen, of the citizen, of citizens, for citizens. 2. A cloud, clouds, of a cloud, of clouds, with a cloud, with clouds. 3. A king, a law. 4. Of fire, with fire. 5. Of the animal, for the animals. 6. The law of the state. 7. The laws of the state. 8. Contrary to¹ the law. 9. Contrary to the laws of the state. 10. By the death of the conqueror.

FOURTH DECLENSION. — U NOUNS.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

ūs, — *masculine*; **ū**, — *neuter*.

They are declined as follows: —

Fructus, *fruit*. Cornu, *horn*. Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.

N. fruct ūs	corn ū	ūs	ū
G. fruct ūs	corn ūs	ūs	ūs
D. fruct ui	corn ū	ui	ū
A. fruct um	corn ū	um	ū
V. fruct ūs	corn ū	ūs	ū
A. fruct ū	corn ū	ū	ū

PLURAL.

N. fruct ūs	corn uā	ūs	uā
G. fruct uūm	corn uūm	uūm	uūm
D. fruct ibūs	corn ibūs	ibūs (ūbūs)	ibūs (ūbūs)
A. fruct ūs	corn uā	ūs	uā
V. fruct ūs	corn uā	ūs	uā
A. fruct ibūs .	corn ibūs .	ibūs (ūbūs).	ibūs (ūbūs).

1. STEM. — In nouns of the fourth declension the stem ends in **ū**: *fructū*, *cornū*.

2. CASE-ENDINGS. — The case-endings here given contain the stem-ending **ū**, weakened to **i** in *ibūs*, but retained in *ūbūs*.

¹ See Rule XXXII. 432. The words *contrary to* are to be rendered by a single Latin preposition.

EXERCISE X.

I. Vocabulary.

Adventūs, ūs, m.	arrival, approach.
Antē, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	before.
Caesār, Caesāris, m.	Caesar, a Roman surname.
Cantūs, ūs, m.	singing, song.
Conspectūs, ūs, m.	sight, presence.
Exercītūs, ūs, m.	army.
Hostīs, hostīs, m. and f.	enemy.
Impētūs, ūs, m.	attack.
In, <i>prep.</i>	in/o with acc., in with abl.
Luscīniā, ae, f.	nightingale.
Occūsūs, ūs, m.	the setting, as of the sun.
Post, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	after.
Ver, vēris, n.	spring.

II. Translate into English.

1. Fructus, cantus. 2. Fructibus, cantibus. 3. Cantus luscīniae.¹ 4. Cantu luscīniae. 5. Cantibus luscīniārum. 6. Adventus veris. 7. Post adventum² veris.¹ 8. Solis occūsus. 9. Post solis occūsū. 10. Caesāris adventu. 11. Ante adventum Caesāris. 12. Impētus hostium. 13. Impētu hostium. 14. In conspectu exercītus.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The army, the armies. 2. For the army, for the armies. 3. Of the army, of the armies. 4. The arrival of the army. 5. Before the arrival of the army. 6. After³

¹ Genitive, according to Rule XVI. See p. 21.

² Used with *post*, according to Rule XXXII. See p. 26.

³ See Rule XXXII. 432, p. 26. The pupil will remember that the English prepositions, *to*, *for*, *with*, *from*, *by*, are generally rendered into Latin by merely putting the noun in the proper case, i.e. in the Dative for *to* or *for*, and in the Ablative for *with*, *from*, *by*. Other English prepositions, *before*, *after*, *behind*, *between*, etc., are rendered into Latin by corresponding Latin prepositions.

the arrival of the consul. 7. The singing of the night-
ingale. 8. After the setting of the sun. 9. Before the
attack of the enemy. 10. After the attack of the enemy.
11. In¹ the city, into¹ the city, for the city. 12. In sight
of the king. 13. By the orations of Cicero. 14. Before
the death of the king. 15. After the death of Cicero, the
consul.

FIFTH DECLENSION. — E NOUNS.

120. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **ēs**, — *femi-
nine*, and are declined as follows: ² —

*Dies, day.*³ *Res, thing.* Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.

<i>N. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>G. diēī</i>	<i>rēī</i>	<i>eī</i>
<i>D. diēī</i>	<i>rēī</i>	<i>eī</i>
<i>A. diēm</i>	<i>rēm</i>	<i>ēm</i>
<i>V. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>A. diē</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>e</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>G. diērūm</i>	<i>rērūm</i>	<i>ērūm</i>
<i>D. diēbūs</i>	<i>rēbūs</i>	<i>ēbūs</i>
<i>A. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>V. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>A. diēbūs.</i>	<i>rēbūs.</i>	<i>ēbūs.</i>

1. STEM. — The stem of nouns of the fifth declension ends
in **ē**: *diē, re*.

2. CASE-ENDINGS. — The case-endings here given contain the
stem ending **ē**, which appears in all the cases. It is shortened

¹ See page 27, foot-note 1.

² But nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want the
Genitive, Dative, and Ablative plural; and many admit no plural
whatever.

³ *Dies, day*, is an exception in gender, as it is generally *mascu-
line*, though sometimes *feminine* in the singular.

(1) in the ending *eī*,¹ when preceded by a consonant, and (2) in the ending *ēm*.

EXERCISE XI.

I. Vocabulary.

Aciēs, āciēī, <i>f.</i>	battle-array, army.
Amīcūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	friend.
Cībūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	food.
Dē, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	concerning.
Diēs, diēī, <i>m. and f.</i>	day.
Fāciēs, fāciēī, <i>f.</i>	face, appearance.
Nūmērūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	number, quantity.
Rēs, rēī, <i>f.</i>	thing, affair.
✓ Spēciēs, spēcīēī, <i>f.</i>	appearance.
✓ Spēs, spēī, <i>f.</i>	hope.
Victōriā, ae, <i>f.</i>	victory.

II. Translate into English.

1. Diēī, diērum, diēbus. 2. Aciēī, aciem, acie. 3. Diem, speciem. 4. Die, specie. 5. Res, spes. 6. Rei, spei. 7. Victoriæ spes. 8. Victoriæ spe. 9. Diēī horæ. 10. Nūmērūs diērum. 11. Gloria, cibus, nubes, cantus, facies. 12. Gloriæ, cibi, nubis, cantus, faciēī. 13. Gloriam, cibum, nubem, cantum, faciem. 14. De victoria, in mare, ad consulem.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. A day, days. 2. Of the day, of the days. 3. For the day, for the days. 4. The thing, the things. 5. With the thing, with the things. 6. Concerning the thing, concerning the things. 7. Of the thing, of the things. 8. Concerning the battle-array. 9. Wisdom, friend, citizen, fruit, hope. 10. For wisdom, for a citizen, for hope.

¹ The learner will notice that *e* in the ending *eī* is long in *diēī*, where it is preceded by a vowel, but short in *rēī*, where it is preceded by a consonant. In both instances, however, the *e* belongs to the stem.

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

146. THE adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bōnus*, good: *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies: *bōnus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension, and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

A AND O STEMS.

148. *Bōnus*, good.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bōnūs</i>	<i>bōnā</i>	<i>bōnū</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bonū</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonū</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>bonē</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonū</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonō</i> ;

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bonōrū</i>	<i>bonārū</i>	<i>bonōrū</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonās</i>	<i>bonā</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i> .

1. *BONUS* is declined in the *Masc.* like *serrus* of Decl. II. (51), in the *Fem.* like *mensa* of Decl. I. (48), and in the *Neut.* like *tempium*

of Decl. II. (51). The stems are *bōno* in the Masc. and Neut., and *bōna* in the Fem.

149. Liber, free.

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	libēr	libērā	libērūm
Gen.	libērī	libērae	libērī
Dat.	libērō	libērae	libērō
Acc.	libērūm	libērām	libērūm
Voc.	libēr	libērā	libērūm
Abl.	libērō	libērā	libērō;

PLURAL.

Nom.	libērī	libērae	libērā
Gen.	liberōrūm	liberārūm	liberōrūm
Dat.	libērīs	libērīs	libērīs
Acc.	libērōs	libērās	libērā
Voc.	libērī	libērae	libērā
Abl.	libērīs	libērīs	libērīs.

1. LIBER is declined in the Masc. like *puer* (51), and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bōnus*.

150. Aeger, sick.

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	aegēr	aegrā	aegrūm
Gen.	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī
Dat.	aegrō	aegrac	aegrō
Acc.	aegrūm	aegrām	aegrūm
Voc.	aeger	aegrā	aegrūm
Abl.	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō;

PLURAL.

Nom.	aegrī	aegrac	aegrā
Gen.	aegrōrūm	aegrārūm	aegrōrūm
Dat.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
Acc.	aegrōs	aegrās	aegrā
Voc.	aegrī	aegrae	aegrā
Abl.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs.

1. **AEGER** is declined in the Masc. like *āger* (51), and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bōnus*. ✓

RULE XXXIII. — Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

*Fortūna caeca est. Fortune is blind.*¹ — Cic. *Verae amicitiae, true friendships.* — Cic. *Magister optimus, the best teacher.* — Cic.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Verae amicitiae, True friendships.

Verae is an adjective (146) of the First and Second Declensions (147): STEM, *vera* (148, 1). Singular: N. *verus, verā, verum*; G. *verī, verae, verī*; D. *vero, verae, vero*; A. *verum, veram, verum*; V. *vere, verā, verum*; A. *vero, verā, vero*. Plural: N. *verī, verae, vera*; G. *verōrum, verārum, verōrum*; D. *veris, veris, veris*; A. *veros, veras, vera*; V. *verī, verae, vera*; A. *veris, veris, veris*. It is in the Nominative Plural Feminine, and agrees with its noun *amicitiae*, according to Rule XXXIII: "An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE."

EXERCISE XII.

I. Vocabulary.

✓ Annūlūs, ī, m.	ring.
Aureūs, ā, ūm, ²	golden.
Beātūs, ā, ūm,	happy, blessed.
Bōnūs, ā, ūm,	good.
Egrēgiūs, ā, ūm,	distinguished.
Fidūs, ā, ūm,	faithful.
Grātūs, ā, ūm,	acceptable, pleasing.
Magnūs, ā, ūm,	great.

¹ Here the adjective *caeca* is in the feminine gender, in the singular number, and in the nominative case, to agree with *fortūna*. It is declined like **BONUS**: *caecus, caeca, caecum*.

² The endings *a* and *um* belong respectively to the feminine and to the neuter. Thus *aureus, aurea, aureum*, like *bonus*, 148.

Multūs, ū, ūm,	much, many.
Puellā, ae, f.	girl.
Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm,	beautiful.
Rēginā, ae, f.	queen.
Rēgnūm, i, n.	kingdom.
Vērūs, ū, ūm,	true.
Vitā, ae, f.	life.

II. Translate into English.

1. Amīcus fidus.¹ 2. Amīci fidi. 3. Amīco fido. 4. Amīcum fidum. 5. Amīce fide. 6. Amicōrum fidōrum. 7. Amīcis fidis. 8. Amīcos fidos. 9. Corōnā aureā. 10. Corōnae aureae. 11. Corōnam auream. 12. Corōnā aureā. 13. Coronārum aureārum. 14. Corōnis aureis. 15. Corōnas aureas. 16. Donum gratum. 17. Doni grati. 18. Dono grāto. 19. Dona grata. 20. Donōrum gratōrum. 21. Donis gratis. 22. Ager pulcher. 23. Puellā pulchrā. 24. Donum pulchrum. 25. Agri pulchri. 26. Puellae pulchrae. 27. Dona pulchra. 28. Beātā vitā. 29. Aureus annūlus. 30. Aurei annūli. 31. Magnā gloriā. 32. Egrediā victoriā.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. A true² friend. 2. The true² friends. 3. For a true friend. 4. For true friends. 5. Of the true friend. 6. Of true friends. 7. True glory. 8. With true glory. 9. Of true glory. 10. An acceptable word. 11. Acceptable words. 12. With acceptable words. 13. Of acceptable

¹ In Latin the adjective generally follows its noun, as in this example; though sometimes it precedes it, as in English. When emphatic, the adjective is placed before its noun; as, *Verae amicitiae*, true friendships. *Fidus* agrees with *amicus*, according to Rule XXXIII.

² Be sure and put the adjective in the right form to agree with its noun, according to Rule XXXIII.

words. 14. A beautiful book. 15. The beautiful books. 16. With a beautiful book. 17. Of beautiful books. 18. The beautiful queen. 19. The crown of the beautiful queen. 20. The beautiful crown of the queen. 21. A good king, a good queen, a good kingdom. 22. The brothers of the good king.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CONSONANT AND I STEMS.

152. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes : —

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms, one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms ; the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form, the same for all genders.

153. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS in this declension have the stem in *i*, and are declined as follows : —

Acer, sharp.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācēr</i>	<i>ācrīs</i>	<i>ācrē</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>acrēm</i>	<i>acrēm</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>acēr</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī;</i>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>acrēs, is</i>	<i>acrēs, is</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs.</i>

154. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS are declined as follows: —

Tristi^{us}, sad.

Tristi^{or}, more sad.

SINGULAR.

<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. tristis</i>	<i>tristē</i>	<i>N. tristi^{or}</i>	<i>tristi^{us}</i>
<i>G. tristis</i>	<i>tristi^s</i>	<i>G. tristi^{or}is</i>	<i>tristi^{or}is</i>
<i>D. tristī</i>	<i>tristī</i>	<i>D. tristi^{or}i</i>	<i>tristi^{or}i</i>
<i>A. tristēm</i>	<i>tristē</i>	<i>A. tristi^{or}ēm</i>	<i>tristi^{us}</i>
<i>V. tristis</i>	<i>tristē</i>	<i>V. tristi^{or}</i>	<i>tristi^{us}</i>
<i>A. tristī</i>	<i>tristī</i> ;	<i>A. tristi^{or}ē (i)</i>	<i>tristi^{or}ē (i)</i> ;

PLURAL.

<i>N. tristēs</i>	<i>tristi^a</i>	<i>N. tristi^{or}ēs</i>	<i>tristi^{or}a</i>
<i>G. tristi^{um}</i>	<i>tristi^{um}</i>	<i>G. tristi^{or}ūm</i>	<i>tristi^{or}ūm</i>
<i>D. tristībūs</i>	<i>tristībūs</i>	<i>D. tristi^{or}ibūs</i>	<i>tristi^{or}ibūs</i>
<i>A. tristēs, is</i>	<i>tristi^a</i>	<i>A. tristi^{or}ēs</i>	<i>tristi^{or}a</i>
<i>V. tristēs</i>	<i>tristi^a</i>	<i>V. tristi^{or}ēs</i>	<i>tristi^{or}a</i>
<i>A. tristībūs</i>	<i>tristībūs.</i>	<i>A. tristi^{or}ibūs</i>	<i>tristi^{or}ibūs.</i>

155. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *l* or *r*, and are declined, in the main, like nouns of the same endings.

156. *Audax, audacious.*

Fēlix, happy.

SINGULAR.

<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. audax</i>	<i>audax</i>	<i>N. fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>
<i>G. audācīs</i>	<i>audācīs</i>	<i>G. felicīs</i>	<i>felicīs</i>
<i>D. audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>D. felicī</i>	<i>felicī</i>
<i>A. audācēm</i>	<i>audax</i>	<i>A. felicēm</i>	<i>felix</i>
<i>V. audax</i>	<i>audax</i>	<i>V. felix</i>	<i>felix</i>
<i>A. audācī (ē)</i>	<i>audācī (ē)</i> ;	<i>A. felicī (ē)</i>	<i>felicī (ē)</i> ;

PLURAL.

<i>N. audācēs</i>	<i>audaci^a</i>	<i>N. felicēs</i>	<i>felicī^a</i>
<i>G. audaci^{um}</i>	<i>audaci^{um}</i>	<i>G. felici^{um}</i>	<i>felici^{um}</i>
<i>D. audaci^{būs}</i>	<i>audaci^{būs}</i>	<i>D. felicī^{būs}</i>	<i>felicī^{būs}</i>
<i>A. audācēs (is)</i>	<i>audaci^a</i>	<i>A. felicēs (is)</i>	<i>felicī^a</i>
<i>V. audācēs</i>	<i>audaci^a</i>	<i>V. felicēs</i>	<i>felicī^a</i>
<i>A. audaci^{būs}</i>	<i>audāci^{būs}.</i>	<i>A. felicī^{būs}</i>	<i>felicī^{būs}.</i>

157. Amans, *loving*.Prūdēns, *prudent*.

SINGULAR.

<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. āmans	āmans	N. prūdēns	prūdēns
G. amantīs	amantīs	G. prudentīs	prudentīs
D. amantī	amantī	D. prudentī	prudentī
A. amantēm	amans	A. prudentēm	prudens
V. amans	amans	V. prudens	prudens
A. amantē (ī)	amantē (ī);	A. prudentī (ē)	prudentī (ē);

PLURAL.

N. amantēs	amantiā	N. prudentēs	prudentiā
G. amantiūm	amantiūm	G. prudentiūm	prudentiūm
D. amantiūs	amantiūs	D. prudentiūs	prudentiūs
A. amantēs (īs)	amantiā	A. prudentēs (īs)	prudentiā
V. amantēs	amantiā	V. prudentēs	prudentiā
A. amantiūs	amantiūs.	A. prudentiūs	prudentiūs.

EXERCISE XIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Acēr, ācris, ācrē,	<i>sharp, severe.</i>
Animāl, animālis, <i>n.</i>	<i>animal.</i>
Brēvis, ē,	<i>short, brief.</i>
Crūdēlis, ē,	<i>cruel.</i>
Dōlōr, dōlōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>pain, grief.</i>
Dux, dūcis, <i>m.</i>	<i>leader.</i>
Fertīlis, ē,	<i>fertile.</i>
Fortis, ē,	<i>brave.</i>
Nāvālis, ē,	<i>naval.</i>
Omnis, ē,	<i>every, all, whole.</i>
Pugnā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>battle.</i>
Sāpiens, sāpientis,	<i>wise.</i>
Singulāris, ē,	<i>singular, remarkable.</i>
Utilis, ē,	<i>useful.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Dolor acer. 2. Dolores acres. 3. Lex acris. 4. Legibus acris.
5. Hostis crudelis. 6. Hostem crudē-

lem. 7. Miles fortis. 8. Virtus militis¹ fortis. 9. Virtute militum¹ fortium. 10. Ager fertilis. 11. In agro fertili. 12. Agros fertiles. 13. In agris fertilibus. 14. Post vitam brevem. 15. Pugnae navales. 16. Post pugnas navales. 17. Singularis virtus. 18. Singulari virtute. 19. Omne animal. 20. Omnia animalia.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. A useful citizen. 2. Of useful citizens. 3. For a useful citizen. 4. For useful citizens. 5. Of a useful citizen. 6. The wise judge. 7. Wise judges. 8. For the wise judge. 9. For wise judges. 10. Brave soldiers. 11. For brave soldiers. 12. A brave soldier. 13. Of the brave soldier. 14. The brave leader. 15. Brave leaders. 16. The word of the brave leader. 17. By the words of the brave leader.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms, called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree: *altus*, *altiör*, *altissimüs*,² high, higher, highest. These forms denote different degrees of the quality expressed by the adjective.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison: —

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON, by endings.

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON, by adverbs.

¹ Genitive, according to Rule XVI.

² Each of these forms of the adjective is declined. Thus *altus* and *altissimüs* are declined like *bonus*, 148: *altus*, *a*, *um*; *alti*, *ae*, *i*, etc.; *altissimüs*, *a*, *um*; *altissimi*, *ae*, *i*, etc. *Altior* is declined like *tristior*, 154: *altior*, *altius*; *altiöris*, etc.

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:—

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issīmūs,	issīmā,	issīmūm:

Altus, altior, altissimus: *high, higher, highest.*

lēvis, levior, levissimus: *light, lighter, lightest.*

1. VOWEL STEMS lose their final vowel: *alto, altior, altissimus.*

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs, *māgis*, more, and *maxīme*, most, to the positive:—

Arduus, māgis arduus, maxīme arduus,

Arduous, more arduous, most arduous.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Orātōr clārīōr, *A more renowned orator.*

Clarior is an adjective (146) in the Comparative degree (160, 162), from the positive *clarus*. Positive, *clārus*; STEM, *clāro*; Comparative, *clarior*; Superlative, *clarissimus*. *Clarior* is an adjective of the Third Declension, declined like *tristior* (154). Singular: N. *clarior, clarius*; G. *clariōris, clariōris*, etc.¹ It is in the Nominative Singular Masculine, and agrees with its noun *orātor*, according to Rule XXXIII.²

EXERCISE XIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Altūs, ā, ūm,	<i>high, lofty.</i>
Clārūs, ā, ūm,	<i>distinguished, renowned.</i>
Intēr, prep. with acc.	<i>among, in the midst of.</i>
Mons, montīs, m.	<i>mountain.</i>

¹ Decline through all the cases of both numbers.

² Give the Rule.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Orātor clarus. 2. Orātor clarior.¹ 3. Orātor clarissimus. 4. Oratōres clari. 5. Oratōres clariōres.¹ 6. Oratōres clarissīmi. 7. Beāta vita. 8. Beatior vita. 9. Beattissima vita. 10. Donum gratum. 11. Donum gratius. 12. Donum gratissimum. 13. Dona grata. 14. Dona gratiōra. 15. Dona gratissima. 16. Milites fortissīmi. 17. Liber utilis. 18. Libri utiliōres. 19. Libris utilissimis. 20. Mons altus. 21. Montes altiōres.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A fertile field. 2. A more fertile field. 3. The most fertile field. 4. Fertile fields. 5. More fertile fields. 6. A useful life. 7. A more useful life. 8. The most useful life. 9. Useful lives. 10. More useful lives. 11. The most useful lives. 12. A pleasing song. 13. A more pleasing song. 14. The most pleasing song.

NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:—

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS: ² *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS: ² *prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES: ² *singūli*, one by one; *bīni*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

¹ Declined like *tristior*, 154. Comparatives and superlatives, as well as positives, must agree with their nouns, according to Rule XXXIII., p. 34.

² *Cardinals* denote simply the *number* of objects: *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two. *Ordinals* denote the *place* of an object in a *series*: *prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second. *Distributives* denote the *number* of objects taken at a time: *singūli*, one by one; *bīni*, two by two.

174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
✓ 1. ūnus, unā, unūm,	primūs, <i>first,</i>	singŭli, <i>one by one.</i>
2. duō, duae, duō,	secundūs, <i>second.</i>	binī, <i>two by two.</i>
3. trēs, triā,	tertiūs, <i>third,</i>	ternī (trīni).
4. quattuor,	quartūs, <i>fourth,</i>	quaternī.
5. quinquē,	quintūs, <i>fifth,</i>	quini.
6. sex,	sextūs,	senī.
7. septēm,	septimūs,	septēni.
8. octō,	octāvūs,	octōni.
9. novēm,	nonūs,	novēni.
10. decēm,	dēcimūs,	dēni.
11. undēcim,	undēcimūs,	undēni.
12. duōdēcim,	duōdēcimūs,	duōdēni.
13. trēdecim, or decēm et trēs,	tertiūs dēcimūs,	terni dēni.
20. viginti,	vicēsīmūs,	vicēni.
21. { viginti ūnūs,	vicē-ūnūs primūs,	vicēni singŭli.
{ ūnūs et viginti,	ūnūs et vicēsīmūs,	singŭli et vicēni.
30. trigintā,	tricēsīmūs,	tricēni.
40. quadrāgintā,	quadrāgēsīmūs,	quadrāgēni.
50. quinquāgintā,	quingūāgēsīmūs,	quingūāgēni.
100. centūm,	centēsīmūs,	centēni.
200. dīcenti, ae, ā,	dīcentēsīmūs,	dīcēni.
1000. millē,	millēsīmūs,	singŭliā millia.

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

175. The first three cardinals are declined as follows: —

Unus, *one.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. ūnūs	unā	unūm	ūnī	ūnae	unā	
G. unīūs	unīūs	unīūs	unōrūm	unārūm	unōrūm	
D. unī	unī	unī	unīs	unis	unīs	
A. unūm	unām	unūm	unōs	unās	unā	
V. unē	unā	unūm	unī	unae	unā	
A. unō	unā	unō;	unis	unis	unis.	

Duo, *two.*Tres, *three.*

N. duō	duae	duō	trēs, m. and f.	triā, n.
G. duōrūm	duārūm	duōrūm	triūm	trium
D. duōbūs	duābūs	duōbūs	tribūs	tribūs
A. duōs, duō	duās	duō	trēs, trīs	triā
V. duō	duae	duō	trēs	triā
A. duōbus	duābūs	duōbūs.	tribūs	tribūs.

176. The cardinals from *quattuor* to *centum* are indeclinable.

177. Hundreds, *dūcenti*, *trēcenti*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bōnus*: *ducenti*, *ae*, *a*.

EXERCISE XV.

I. Vocabulary.

✗ Annūs, i, m.	year.
Classis, classis, f.	fleet.
✓ Fortitūdō, fortitudinis, f.	fortitude, bravery.
Impēriūm, ii, n.	reign, power.
Nāvis, nāvis, f.	ship.
Proeliūm, ii, n.	battle.
Vir, viri, m.	man, hero.

II. Translate into English.

1. Unus¹ liber. 2. Duo¹ libri. 3. Liber primus.¹ 4. Liber secundus. 5. Tres libri. 6. Tertius liber. 7. Tria bella. 8. Post tria bella. 9. Post tertium bellum. 10. Ante quartum bellum. 11. Quattuor² anni. 12. Post bellum quinque annōrum. 13. Decem² dies. 14. Decimus dies.³ 15. Decem horae. 16. Decima hora. 17. Decem proelia. 18. Decimum proelium. 19. Horā diēi decimā. ✗

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Five friends. 2. Of five friends. 3. The fifth year. 4. The fifth day. 5. The fifth present. 6. With five presents. 7. Eight books. 8. With eight books. 9. The eighth book. 10. Before the eighth book. 11. The bravery of two soldiers. 12. By the bravery of two soldiers. ✗

¹ Numeral adjectives agree with their nouns, like other adjectives.

² The indeclinable numeral adjectives (176) may be used without change of form with nouns of any gender and in any case.

³ *Dies*, it will be remembered, is generally masculine.

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

182. THE PRONOUN is the part of speech which supplies the place of nouns: *ĕgō*, I; *tū*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:—

1. Personal Pronouns: *tū*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hīc*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *quī*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quīs*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *āliquīs*, some one.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are,—

Ego, I. Tu, thou. Sui, of himself, etc.¹

SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>ĕgō</i>	<i>tū</i>	
Gen. <i>meī</i>	<i>tuī</i>	<i>sui</i>
Dat. <i>mihi</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
Acc. <i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē</i>
Voc. <i>tū</i>		
Abl. <i>mē</i> ;	<i>tē</i> ;	<i>sē</i> ;

PLURAL.

Nom. <i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	
Gen. <i>nostrūm</i> }	<i>vestrūm</i> }	<i>sui</i>
<i>nostrī</i> }	<i>vestrī</i> }	
Dat. <i>nōbis</i>	<i>vōbis</i>	<i>sibi</i>
Acc. <i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>sē</i>
Voc. <i>vōs</i>		
Abl. <i>nōbis.</i>	<i>vōbis.</i>	<i>sē.</i>

4. Personal Pronouns are also called *Substantive pronouns*, because they are always used as substantives.

¹ *Of himself, herself, itself.* The Nominative is not used.

5. *Sui*, from its reflexive signification, of *himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From Personal Pronouns are formed the *Possessives*: —

meūs, ā, ūm, <i>my</i> ;	nostēr, trā, trūm, <i>our</i> ;
tuus, a, um, <i>thy, your</i> ;	vester, tra, trum, <i>your</i> ;
suus, a, um, <i>his, her, its</i> ;	suus, a, um, <i>their</i> .

1. Possessives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions; but *meus* has in the Vocative Singular, Masculine, generally *mī*, sometimes *meus*.

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are, —

Hīc, istē, illē, is, ipsē, idem.

They are declined as follows, —

I. Hic, this.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
G. hujūs	hujūs	hujūs	hōrūm	hārūm	hōrūm
D. huīc	huīc	huīc	his	his	his
A. hunc	hanc	hōc ¹	hōs	hās	haec
A. hōc	hāc	hōc;	his	his	his.

II. Istē, that, that of yours.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. istē	istā	istūd	isti	istae	istā
G. istiūs	istiūs	istiūs	istōrūm	istārūm	istōrūm
D. isti	isti	isti	istis	istis	istis
A. istūm	istām	istūd ¹	istōs	istās	istā
A. istō	istā	istō;	istis	istis	istis.

III. Illē, he or that, is declined like *istē*.

¹ The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

IV. *Is, he, this, that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>is</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>ei, ii</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>eā</i>
G. <i>ejūs</i>	<i>ejūs</i>	<i>ejūs</i>	<i>eōrūm</i>	<i>eārūm</i>	<i>eōrūm</i>
D. <i>ei</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
A. <i>eūm</i>	<i>eām</i>	<i>id</i> ¹	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>eā</i>
A. <i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō;</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs.</i>

V. *Ipsē, self, he.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>ipsē</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsūm</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsā</i>
G. <i>ipsiūs</i>	<i>ipsiūs</i>	<i>ipsiūs</i>	<i>ipsōrūm</i>	<i>ipsārūm</i>	<i>ipsōrūm</i>
D. <i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
A. <i>ipsūm</i>	<i>ipsām</i>	<i>ipsūm</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsā</i>
A. <i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō;</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis.</i>

VI. *Idem, the same.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>idēm</i> ²	<i>eādēm</i>	<i>idēm</i>	<i>eidēm</i>	<i>eaedēm</i>	<i>eādēm</i>
G. <i>ejusdēm</i>	<i>ejusdēm</i>	<i>ejusdēm</i>	<i>iidēm</i>	<i>eaedēm</i>	<i>eādēm</i>
D. <i>eidēm</i>	<i>eidēm</i>	<i>eidēm</i>	<i>eōrundēm</i>	<i>eārundēm</i>	<i>eōrundēm</i>
A. <i>eundēm</i>	<i>eandēm</i>	<i>idēm</i>	<i>eisdēm</i>	<i>eisdēm</i>	<i>eisdēm</i>
A. <i>eōdēm</i>	<i>eādēm</i>	<i>eōdēm;</i>	<i>iisdēm</i>	<i>iisdēm</i>	<i>iisdēm</i>
			<i>eosdēm</i>	<i>easdēm</i>	<i>eādēm</i>
			<i>eisdēm</i>	<i>eisdēm</i>	<i>eisdēm</i>
			<i>iisdēm</i>	<i>iisdēm</i>	<i>iisdēm.</i>

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows: —

¹ The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

² *Idem*, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *idem* to *idem*, and *iddēm* to *idem*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
G. cuius	cuius	cuius	quorum	quarum	quorum
D. cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
A. quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quae
A. quod	qua	quod;	quibus	quibus	quibus.

V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are, —

Quis and *qui* with their compounds.

I. *Quis*, *who*, *which*, *what*?

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. quis	quae	quid	qui	quae	quae
G. cuius	cuius	cuius	quorum	quarum	quorum
D. cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
A. quem	quam	quid	quos	quas	quae
A. quod	qua	quod;	quibus	quibus	quibus. ✓

II. *Qui*, *which*, *what*? is declined like the *relative qui*.

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are, —

Quis and *qui*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, and *qui*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*. But

1. After *si*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *nūm*, the Feminine Singular and Neuter Plural have *quae* or *quā*: *si quae*, *si quā*.

EXERCISE XVI.

I. Vocabulary.

Consiliū, ii, n.
Epistolā, ae, f.

design, plan.
letter.

Ex, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>from.</i>
Insulā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>island.</i>
Pārens, <i>pārentis, m. and f.</i>	<i>parent.</i>
Pars, <i>partis, f.</i>	<i>part, portion.</i>
Pātriā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>country, native country.</i>
Praeclārūs, <i>ā, ūm,</i>	<i>distinguished.</i>
✓ Prātūm, <i>i, n.</i>	<i>meadow.</i>
Prō, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>for, in behalf of.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Mihi, tibi, sibi. 2. Ad me,¹ ad te. 3. Contra nos, contra se. 4. Ante vos, ante nos. 5. Pro vobis.¹ 6. Meā² vitā. 7. Patriā tuā. 8. Pro patriā tuā.² 9. Contra patriam tuam. 10. Nostra consilia. 11. Nostris² consiliis. 12. Vestri patres. 13. In nostrā patriā. 14. Hic² puer, hi puēri. 15. Haec corōnā, hae corōnae. 16. Hoc donum, haec dona. 17. Haec urbs praeclārā. 18. Ex hac vitā. 19. Illius libri. 20. In eā pugnā. 21. In eōdem prato. 22. Quae² urbs?

III. Translate into Latin.

1. We, you. 2. You, me, himself. 3. For you, for me, for himself. 4. Of himself, of you. 5. Against you, against me. 6. My book, your book, his book. 7. My books, your books, his books. 8. Our parents, your parents, their parents. 9. This letter, that letter. 10. These letters, those letters. 11. This city, that city. 12. These cities, those cities. 13. After that victory. 14. The same words. 15. With the same words.

¹ See 184, 4. Substantive pronouns are used in the several cases like nouns, and are parsed by the same rules.

² The *Possessive*, the *Demonstrative*, and the *Interrogative* Pronouns, in this exercise, are all used as *adjectives*, and agree with their nouns, like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. 438, p. 34.

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

192. VERBS in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *lĕgit*, he reads.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes: —

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS, which admit a direct object of their action: *servum*¹ *verbĕrat*, he beats the slave.

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS, which do not admit such an object: *puer currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice*, *Mood*, *Tense*, *Number*, and *Person*.

I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices:² —

I. THE ACTIVE VOICE, which represents the subject as acting or existing: *păter filium amat*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

II. THE PASSIVE VOICE, which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing: *filius a patre amătur*, the son is loved by his father.

II. MOODS.

196. Moods³ are either Definite or Indefinite, —

I. THE DEFINITE or FINITE MOODS make up the finite verb. They are, —

1. THE INDICATIVE MOOD, which either asserts some-

¹ Here *servum*, the slave, is the direct object of the action denoted by the verb *beats*: *beats* (what?) *the slave*.

² *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts*, or is *acted upon*.

³ *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several moods.

thing as a *fact*, or inquires after the fact: *lĕgit*, he is reading; *lĕgitne*, is he reading?

2. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, which expresses, not an actual fact, but a *conception*, often rendered by *may*, *let*, etc.: *lĕgat*, he may read, let him read.

3. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lĕge*, read thou.

II. THE INDEFINITE MOODS express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives. They are, —

1. THE INFINITIVE, which, like the English infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb, without any necessary reference to person or number: *lĕgĕre*, to read.

2. THE GERUND, which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in *ING*: *amandi*, of loving; *amandi causā*, for the sake of loving.

3. THE SUPINE, which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular*: *amātum*, to love, for loving; *amātu*, to be loved, in loving.

4. THE PARTICIPLE, which, like the English participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active; the Present and the Future; *amans*, loving; *amātūrūs*, about to love; and two in the Passive, the Perfect, *amātūs*, loved; and the Gerundive,¹ *amandūs*, deserving to be loved.

III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses: —

I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION: —

1. Present: *amō*, I love.

2. Imperfect: *amābām*, I was loving.

3. Future: *amābō*, I shall love.

¹ Also called the *Future Passive Participle*.

II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION: —

1. Perfect: *āmāvi*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *āmāvērām*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *āmāvērē*, I shall have loved.

199. NUMBERS AND PERSONS. — There are two numbers, SINGULAR and PLURAL,¹ and three persons, FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.¹

CONJUGATION.

200. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
<i>āre</i> ,	<i>ēre</i> ,	<i>ere</i> ,	<i>ire</i> .

201. STEM AND PRINCIPAL PARTS. — The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine are called, from their importance, the *Principal Parts* of the verb. They are all formed, by means of certain endings, from one common base, called the *Stem*.

202. THE ENTIRE CONJUGATION of any regular verb may be readily formed from the Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.²

203. SUM, *I am*, is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

¹ As in nouns. See 44.

² In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. Sūm, *I am.* — STEMS, *ēs, fu.*¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
sūm,	essē,	fūi,	—. ²

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am.

SINGULAR.

sūm,	<i>I am,</i>
ēs,	<i>thou art,</i> ³
est,	<i>he is ;</i>

PLURAL.

sūmūs,	<i>we are,</i>
estis,	<i>you are,</i>
sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I was.

ērām,	<i>I was,</i>
erās,	<i>thou wast,</i>
erāt,	<i>he was ;</i>

ērāmūs,	<i>we were,</i>
erātis,	<i>you were,</i>
erant,	<i>they were.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will be.

erō,	<i>I shall be,</i>
eris,	<i>thou wilt be,</i>
erit,	<i>he will be ;</i>

erimūs,	<i>we shall be,</i>
eritis,	<i>you will be,</i>
erunt,	<i>they will be.</i>

PERFECT.

I have been, was.

ful,	<i>I have been,</i>
fuisti,	<i>thou hast been,</i>
fuit,	<i>he has been ;</i>

fuiimūs,	<i>we have been,</i>
fuistis,	<i>you have been,</i>
fuērunt,	<i>they have been.</i>
fuērē,	

PLUPERFECT.

I had been.

fuērām,	<i>I had been,</i>
fuērās,	<i>thou hadst been,</i>
fuērāt,	<i>he had been ;</i>

fuērāmūs,	<i>we had been,</i>
fuērātis,	<i>you had been,</i>
fuērant,	<i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been.

fuērō,	<i>I shall have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>
fuērīt,	<i>he will have been ;</i>

fuērīmūs,	<i>we shall have been,</i>
fuērītis,	<i>you will have been.</i>
fuērint,	<i>they will have been.</i>

¹ *Sum* has two verb-stems, while regular verbs have only one.² The supine is wanting in this verb.³ Or, *you are*: *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may be.*¹

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sim,	<i>I may be,</i>	sinūs,	<i>we may be,</i>
sīs,	<i>thou mayst be,</i>	sītīs,	<i>you may be,</i>
sīt,	<i>he may be ;</i>	sint,	<i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should be.

essēm,	<i>I might be,</i>	essēmūs,	<i>we might be,</i>
essēs,	<i>thou mightst be,</i>	essētīs,	<i>you might be,</i>
essēt,	<i>he might be ;</i>	essent,	<i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT.

I may have been.

fuērīm,	<i>I may have been,</i>	fuērīmūs,	<i>we may have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>	fuērītīs,	<i>you may have been,</i>
fuērīt,	<i>he may have been ;</i>	fuērint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have been.

fuissēm,	<i>I might have been,</i>	fuissēmūs,	<i>we might have been,</i>
fuissēs,	<i>thou mightst have been,</i>	fuissētīs,	<i>you might have been,</i>
fuissēt,	<i>he might have been ;</i>	fuissent,	<i>they might have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ēs,	<i>be thou,</i>	estē,	<i>be ye.</i>
FUT. estō,	<i>thou shalt be,</i> ²	estōtē,	<i>ye shall be,</i>
estō,	<i>he shall be ;</i>	suntō,	<i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. essē,	<i>to be.</i>		
PERF. fuissē,	<i>to have been.</i>		
FUT. futūrus ³	<i>essē, to be about to be.</i>	FUT. futūrus, ³	<i>about to be.</i>

¹ The Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*: sit, *he may be, may he be, let him be.*

² The Future is sometimes best rendered like the Present, or with *let*: esto, *thou shalt be, or be thou ;* suntō, *they shall be, or let them be.*

³ *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus* ; N. *futūrus, a, um, G. futūri, ae, i ;* so in the Infinitive: *futūrus, a, um esse.*

RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite¹ Verb agrees with its Subject² in NUMBER and PERSON:

Deus mundum aedificāvit,³ *God made the world.* Cic. Ego rēges ejēci, vos tȳrannos intrōducītis, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES.— These agree with the subject, according to Rule XXXIII. page 32:

Thebāni accusāti sunt,⁴ *The Thebans were accused.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.— The subject is generally omitted —

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, or can be readily supplied from the context:

Discipūlos mōneo,⁵ ut stūdia āment,⁶ *I instruct pupils to love⁶ their studies.* Quint.

¹ See 196, I.

² With the Active Voice of a Transitive Verb, the Subject represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *performs* the action; as, *Deus* in the first example, *God made*: but, with the Passive Voice, it represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *receives* the action, i.e. *is acted upon*, as, *Thebāni*, 460, 1: *the Thebans were accused*.

³ *Aedificāvit* is in the Third Person and in the Singular Number, because its subject *deus* is in that person and number. *Ejēci* is in the First Person Singular, to agree with its subject *ego*; and *introducītis* in the Second Person Plural; to agree with its subject *vos*.

⁴ The verb *accusāti sunt* is in the Third Person Plural, to agree with its subject *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXV.; but the participle *accusāti*, which is one element of the verb, is in the Nominative Plural Masculine, to agree with its noun *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXIII.

⁵ The subject of *moneo* is *ego*. It is omitted, because it is a Personal Pronoun, and is, accordingly, fully implied in the verb, as the ending *eo* shows, as we shall soon see, that the subject cannot be *you*, *he*, or *they*, but must be *I*.

Ut—ament means literally *that they may love*. The subject of *ament* is the pronoun *ii*, *they*, referring to *discipūlos*. It is omitted, partly because it is implied in the ending *ent*, but more especially because it can be so readily supplied from *discipūlos*, which shows *who* are here meant by *they*.

⁶ *To love*, or, more literally, *that they may love*.

The Pronoun may be expressed for emphasis or contrast, as in the second example under the rule.

I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING VERBS.

In parsing a verb,

1. Tell whether it is transitive or intransitive (193), name the Conjugation to which it belongs, give the Present Indicative Active and the Stem (201).
2. Give the Principal Parts (201), and inflect the tense in which the given form is found.¹
3. Give the voice, mood, tense, number, and person.
4. Name the subject, and give the Rule for agreement.

MODELS FOR PARSING THE VERB SUM.

1. *Sum with Subject.*

Nōs² ērāmus, We were.

Erāmus is an intransitive irregular³ verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*, — ⁴. Inflection of tense (Imperfect Indicative): *eram, eras, erat, erāmus, erātis, erant*. The form *erāmus* is found in the Indicative mood, Imperfect tense, First person, Plural number, and agrees with its subject *nos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

2. *Sum without Subject.*⁵

Fuī, *I have been.*

Fui is an intransitive irregular verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*. Inflection of tense (Perfect Indicative): *fui, fuisti*,

¹ That is, if the form occurs in a given tense of the Indicative, give the several forms for the different persons and numbers in that tense and mood. The teacher may also find it convenient to require the synopsis of the mood till the required tense is found.

² *Nos* is the Subject. With an intransitive verb, the Subject represents the person (or thing) who is in the condition, or state, denoted by the verb.

³ Hence it does not belong to either of the regular conjugations.

⁴ The *Supine* is wanting.

⁵ That is, without any subject expressed.

fuit; *fuimus*, *fuistis*, *fuērunt*, or *fuere*. The form *fui* is found in the *Indicative* mood, *Perfect* tense, *First* person, *Singular* number, and agrees with its subject *ego* omitted (though fully implied¹ in the ending *i* of *fui*), according to Rule XXXV.

EXERCISE XVII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Sum, sumus, sunt.² 2. Es, est, estis. 3. Eram, erāmus.² 4. Erat, erant. 5. Eris, eritis.² 6. Erit, erunt. 7. Fui, fuēram, fuēro. 8. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus. 9. Fuisti, fuistis. 10. Fuit, fuērunt. 11. Fuērat, fuērant. 12. Fuērit, fuērint. 13. Sim, simus. 14. Sit, sint. 15. Essem, essēmus. 16. Esset, essent. 17. Fuērim, fuisset. 18. Fuerimus, fuissēmus. 19. Fuērit, fuērint. 20. Fuisset, fuissent. 21. Es, este.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He³ is, they³ are. 2. He has been, they have been. 3. He will be, they will be. 4. He was, they were. 5. He will have been, they will have been. 6. He had been, they had been. 7. I³ was, you were. 8. We have been, you have been. 9. You may be, they may be. 10. He would be, they would be. 11. I might have been, we might have been.

¹ See Rule XXXV., 2, together with the note.

² In parsing the forms contained in this Exercise, observe the second Model just given. If the verb is of the first person, supply, as subject, the personal pronoun (184) of the first person; i.e., *ego* for the singular, and *nos* for the plural. If the verb is of the second person, supply the personal pronoun of the second person; i.e., *tu* for the singular, and *vos* for the plural. If the verb is of the third person, supply the demonstrative pronoun *is* (186) for the singular, and *ii* for the plural, as the personal pronoun *sui* is not used in the Nominative: hence, *ego sum*, *nos sumus*, *ii sunt*.

³ The English pronouns in this Exercise are not to be rendered by the corresponding Latin pronouns, as the latter may be implied in the ending of the verb, as in the Latin forms above: hence, *he is* = *est*.

SUM WITH SUBJECT AND ADJECTIVE.

RULE III. — Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite¹ Verb is put in the Nominative:

Servius² regnāvit, *Servius reigned.* Liv. Pātent portae, *The gates are open.* Cic. Rex vicit, *The king conquered.* Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively:

Ego rēges ejēcī, *I have banished kings.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 460, 2; page 54.

MODEL FOR PARSING SUBJECTS.

Rex viciť, *The king conquered.*

Rex is a noun (39) of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (47); of Class I., as its stem ends in a consonant ($x = g-s$, of which *s* is the ending, while *g* belongs to the stem. See 56); STEM, *reg.* Singular: *rex, regis, regi, regem, rex, rege.* Plural: *reges, regum, regibus, reges, reges, regibus.* It is of the Masculine gender, by 42, I. 1.; is in the Nominative Singular; and is the subject of *viciť*, according to Rule III.: "The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative."

EXERCISE XVIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Cătō, Cătōnis, m.	Cato, a distinguished Roman.
Crūdūs, Ń, ūm,	unripe.
Diligens, Diligentis,	diligent.
Discipŭlūs, i, m.	pupil.

¹ See 196, I.

² In these examples, the subjects are *Servius*, *portae*, and *rex*.

Germāniā, <i>ae, f.</i>	Germany.
Jūcundūs, <i>ā, ūm.</i>	pleasant, delightful.
Laudābilis, <i>ē.</i>	praiseworthy, laudable.
Mātūrūs, <i>ā, ūm.</i>	ripe.
Pōmūm, <i>i, n.</i>	fruit.

II. Translate into English.

1. Pax¹ jucunda² est.³ 2. Pax jucunda erit. 3. Vita brevis est. 4. Cato bonus fuit. 5. Cives boni fuērunt. 6. Virtus laudabilis est. 7. Libri utiles sunt. 8. Illi libri utiles erunt. 9. Ille liber utilis fuērat. 10. Utilis⁴ fuisti. 11. Utiles fuistis. 12. Germania fertilis est. 13. Agri fertiles fuērunt. 14. Pōmum crudum est. 15. Poma cruda sunt. 16. Poma mātūra erunt. 17. Miles fortis est. 18. Milites fortes sunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The pupil is diligent.⁵ 2. The pupils were diligent. 3. The boy is good. 4. He will be happy. 5. Good boys are happy. 6. You may be happy. 7. We might have been happy. 8. This soldier will be useful. 9. These soldiers have been useful. 10. Brave soldiers are useful. 11. You will be useful. 12. Let us be useful.

¹ Pax is the subject of *est*, and is therefore in the Nominative, according to Rule III.

² Jucunda is an adjective in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with its noun *pax*, according to Rule XXXIII., page 34.

³ Est is a verb in the Indicative mood, Present tense, Third person, Singular number, and agrees with its subject *pax*, according to Rule XXXV., page 54.

⁴ Utilis agrees with the omitted subject *tu*, implied in the ending of the verb.

⁵ In translating English into Latin, the pupil is expected, in the arrangement of words, to imitate the order followed in the Latin Exercises. He will observe that the subject stands first, and the verb last. But sometimes the verb precedes one or more words in the sentence. Thus the sentence, *Pax jucunda est*, might be *Pax est jucunda*.

SUM WITH PREDICATE NOUN.

RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.

362. A Predicate Noun¹ denoting the same person or thing as its subject agrees with it in CASE :

Ego sum nuntius,¹ *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est declārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

MODEL FOR PARSING PREDICATE NOUNS.

Egō sūm nuntiūs, *I am a messenger.*

Nuntius is a noun (39) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *nuntio*. Singular; *nuntius*, *nuntii*, *nuntio*, *nuntium*, *nuntie*, *nuntio*. Plural; *nuntii*, *nuntiōrum*, *nuntiis*, *nuntios*, *nuntii*, *nuntiis*. It is of the Masculine Gender by 51; is in the Nominative Singular, and, as a Predicate Noun, agrees in case with its subject *ego*, according to Rule I.: "A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE."

346. I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion :

Miltiādes accūsātus est, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. AN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

Quis non paupertātem extimescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun,

¹ Every sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject.

Thus, in the first example under the Rule, *ego*, *I*, is the *subject*, and *sum nuntius* is the *predicate*. When the predicate thus consists of a *noun* with the verb *sum*, or of a *noun* with a passive verb, the *noun* thus used is called a *predicate noun*. Accordingly, *nuntius* in the first example, and *rex* in the second, are *predicate nouns*.

adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num*:

- 1) Questions with *ne* ask for information: *Scribitne*, Is he writing? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.
- 2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes*: *Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing?
- 3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*: *Num scribit*, Is he writing?

EXERCISE XIX.

I. Vocabulary.

Ancūs, i, m.	Ancus, Roman king.
Conditōr, conditōris, m.	founder.
Dēmōsthēnēs, is, m.	Demosthenes, Athenian orator.
Ebriētās, ebriētātis, f.	drunkenness.
Graecūs, ā, ūm,	Greek, Grecian.
Graecus, i, m.	Greek, a Greek.
Insāniā, ae, f.	insanity, madness.
Inventōr, inventōris, m.	inventor.
Mātēr, mātēris, f.	mother.
Mundūs, i, m.	world, universe.
Nonnē, interrog. part.	expects answer yes.
Nūm, interrog. part.	expects answer no.
Philōsophiā, ae, f.	philosophy.
Rōmā, ae, f.	Rome.
Rōmānūs, ā, ūm,	Roman.
Rōmānūs, i, m.	Roman, a Roman.
Rōmūlūs, i, m.	Rōmulus, the founder of Rome.
Scipiō, Scipiōnis, m.	Scipio, Roman general.

II. Translate into English.^{1*}

1. Ancus² fuit³ rex⁴. 2. Nonne⁵ Rōmūlus rex fuērat?
3. Rōmūlus rex fuērat. 4. Quis conditōr Romae⁶ fuit?
5. Rōmūlus conditōr Romae fuit. 6. Ebriētās est insania.
7. Patria⁷ est parens omnium nostrum.⁸ 8. Graeci⁷ multārum artium⁸ inventōres erant. 9. Demōsthēnes orātor fuit.

* For Notes to the references on this page, see page 61.

10. Num hic puer orātor erit? 11. Ille puer orātor sit.
12. Philosophia est mater artium. 13. Cicero clarissimus⁹
orātor fuit. 14. Cantus luscinae jucundissimus⁹ est.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who¹⁰ was the king? ¹¹ 2. Was not¹² Romulus king? ¹¹
3. Romulus was king. 4. Who was the leader of the
Romans? 5. Was not¹² Scipio the leader of the Romans?
6. Scipio was the leader of the Romans. 7. Your brother
is an orator. 8. This boy is my brother. 9. These boys
will be diligent pupils. 10. These pupils will be diligent.

¹ In preparing the longer and more difficult sentences in this and in the subsequent exercises, it is recommended that the pupil should follow the Suggestions which are inserted in this volume, page 143, and which are intended to aid him in discerning the *process* by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence.

² See Rule III. page 57.

³ See Rule XXXV. page 54. The verb sometimes precedes the Predicate Noun, as in this sentence; and sometimes follows it, as in several of the following sentences.

⁴ *Rex* is a *Predicate Noun*, denoting the same person as its subject *Ancus*, and is therefore in the Nominative, to agree with that subject in case, according to Rule I. page 59.

⁵ See 346, II. 1 above.

⁶ Genitive, according to Rule XVI. page 21.

⁷ In this sentence, before turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, notice carefully the endings of the several words in accordance with Suggestion IV. What parts of speech do you find? What cases? What mood, tense, number, and person?

In accordance with Suggestion V., what order will you follow in looking out the words in the Vocabulary?

⁸ *Artium* depends upon *inventores*.

⁹ In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *clarissimus* and *jucundissimus* (162)?

¹⁰ See 188.

¹¹ See Rule I.

¹² *Nonne*. See 346 II. 1.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

205. Amō, *I love.* — STEM, *āma.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
amō,	amāre,	amāvī,	amātum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I love, am loving, do love.

SINGULAR.

amō,	<i>I love,</i>
amās,	<i>thou lovest,</i>
amāt,	<i>he loves ;</i>

PLURAL.

amāmus,	<i>we love,</i>
amātis,	<i>you love,</i>
amant,	<i>they love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I loved, was loving, did love.

amābam,	<i>I was loving,</i>	amābāmus,	<i>we were loving,</i>
amābās,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>	amābātis,	<i>you were loving,</i>
amābat,	<i>he was loving ;</i>	amābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will love.

amābō,	<i>I shall love,</i>	amābimūs,	<i>we shall love,</i>
amābis,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>	amābitis,	<i>you will love,</i>
amābit,	<i>he will love ;</i>	amābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

PERFECT.

I loved, have loved.

amāvī,	<i>I have loved,</i>	amāvimūs,	<i>we have loved,</i>
amāvisti,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>	amāvistis,	<i>you have loved,</i>
amāvit,	<i>he has loved ;</i>	amāverunt, ēre,	<i>they have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had loved.

amāverāam,	<i>I had loved,</i>	amāverāmus,	<i>we had loved,</i>
amāverās,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>	amāverātis,	<i>you had loved,</i>
amāverāt,	<i>he had loved ;</i>	amāverant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have loved.

amāverō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>	amāverimūs,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
amāveris,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>	amāveritis,	<i>you will have loved,</i>
amāverit,	<i>he will have loved ;</i>	amāverint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may love.

SINGULAR.

āmēm,	<i>I may love,</i>
āmēs,	<i>thou mayst love,</i>
āmēt,	<i>he may love;</i>

PLURAL.

āmēmūs,	<i>we may love,</i>
āmētīs,	<i>you may love,</i>
āment,	<i>they may love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should love.

āmārēm,	<i>I might love,</i>	āmārēmūs,	<i>we might love,</i>
āmārēs,	<i>thou mightst love,</i>	āmārētīs,	<i>you might love,</i>
āmārēt,	<i>he might love;</i>	āmārent,	<i>they might love.</i>

PERFECT.

I may have loved.

āmāvērīm,	<i>I may have loved,</i>	āmāvērīmūs,	<i>we may have loved,</i>
āmāvērīs,	<i>thou mayst have loved,</i>	āmāvērītīs,	<i>you may have loved,</i>
āmāvērīt,	<i>he may have loved;</i>	āmāvērīnt,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have loved.

āmāvissēm,	<i>I might have loved,</i>	āmāvissēmūs,	<i>we might have</i>
āmāvissēs,	<i>thou mightst have</i>		<i>loved,</i>
	<i>loved,</i>	āmāvissētīs,	<i>you might have loved,</i>
āmāvissēt,	<i>he might have loved;</i>	āmāvissent,	<i>they might have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. āmā,	<i>love thou;</i>	āmātē,	<i>love ye.</i>
FUT. āmātō,	<i>thou shalt love,</i>	āmātōtē,	<i>ye shall love,</i>
āmātō,	<i>he shall love;</i>	āmantō,	<i>they shall love.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRES. āmārē,	<i>to love.</i>
PERF. āmāvissē,	<i>to have loved.</i>
FUT. āmātūrūs¹ essē,	<i>to be</i>
	<i>about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. āmans,²	<i>loving.</i>
FUT. āmātūrūs,¹	<i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. āmandī,	<i>of loving,</i>
Dat. āmandō,	<i>for loving,</i>
Acc. āmandūm,	<i>loving,</i>
Abl. āmandō,	<i>by loving.</i>

SUPINE.

Acc. āmātūm,	<i>to love,</i>
Abl. āmātū,	<i>to love, be loved.</i>

¹ Decline like *bonus*, 148.

² Decline like *prudens*, 157.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

206. Amor, *I am loved.* — STEM, *ama*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
<i>amōr,</i>	<i>amāri,</i>	<i>amātūs sūm.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.

amōr
amāris, or rē
amātūr;

PLURAL.

amāmūr
amāmīni
amantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was loved.

amābār
amābāris, or rē
amābātūr;

amābāmūr
amābāmīni
amābantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be loved.

amābōr
amābēris, or rē
amābitūr;

amābīmūr
amābīmīni
amābuntūr.

PERFECT.

I have been or was loved.

*amātūs sūm*¹
amātūs es
amātūs est;

amātī sūmūs
amātī estīs
amātī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been loved.

*amātūs ērām*¹
amātūs ērās
amātūs ērāt;

amātī ērāmūs
amātī ērātīs
amātī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been loved.

*amātūs ērō*¹
amātūs ēris
amātūs ērit;

amātī ērimūs
amātī ēritīs
amātī ērunt.

¹ *Fui, fuisti*, etc., are sometimes used for *sum*, *es*, etc.; thus *amātus fui* for *amātus sum*. So *fuēram, fuēras*, etc., for *ērām, ēras*, etc.; also *fuēro, fuēris*, etc., for *ērō, ēris*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may be loved.

SINGULAR.

āmēr
āmērīs, or rē
āmētūr;

PLURAL.

āmēmūr
āmēmīni
āmentūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should be loved.

āmārēr
āmārērīs, or rē
āmārētūr;

āmārēmūr
āmārēmīni
āmārentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been loved.

āmātūs sīm¹
āmātūs sis
āmātūs sīt;

āmātī sīmūs
āmātī sitīs
āmātī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have been loved.

āmātūs essēm¹
āmātūs essēs
āmātūs essēt;

āmātī essēmūs
āmātī essētīs
āmātī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. āmārē, *be thou loved;*

āmāmīni, *be ye loved.*

FUT. āmātōr, *thou shalt be loved;*

āmātōr, *he shall be loved;*

āmantōr, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES āmāri, *to be loved.*

PERF. āmātūs essē, *to have been loved.*

PERF. āmātūs, *having been loved.*

FUT. āmātūm iri, *to be about to be loved.*

GER.² āmandūs, *to be loved, desiring to be loved.*

¹ *Fuērim, fuēris, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sīm, sis, etc.* So also *fuissem, fuisses, etc.*, for *essem, esses, etc.*

² GER. = Gerundive. See 100, 4. 50

MODELS FOR PARSING REGULAR VERBS.

1. *With Subject.*

Vos laudāvistis, *You have praised.*

Laudavistis is a transitive verb (192, 193) of the First Conjugation (201), from *laudo*, STEM, *lauda*. Principal Parts: *laudo*, *laudāre*, *laudāvi*, *laudātum*. Inflection of Tense: *laudāvi*, *laudavisti*, *laudāvit*, *laudavimus*, *laudavistis*, *laudavērunt*, or *laudavēre*. The form *laudavistis* is found in the *Active* voice, *Indicative* mood, *Perfect* tense, *Second* person, *Plural* number, and agrees with its subject *vos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

2. *Without Subject.*

Laudāvistis, *You have-praised.*

This is parsed like *laudavistis*, above, except that it agrees with *vos*, implied in the ending *istis*; while *laudavistis*, above, agrees with *vos* expressed.

FIRST CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Vītāpērō, āre, āvi, ātūm, *to blame.*

Laudō, āre, āvi, ātūm, *to praise.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amo, amābam, amābo.¹ 2. Amas, amābas, amābis.
3. Amat, amant.¹ 4. Amābat, amābant. 5. Amābāt, amā-

¹ The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe in what they are *alike*, and in what they are *unlike*. Thus *amo*, *amābam*, *amābo*, have the letters *am*

bunt.¹ 6. Amāmus, amabāmus, amabīmus. 7. Amāvi, amavēram, amavēro. 8. Amāvī, amavērat, amavērit. 9. Amāvi, amavīmus. 10. Amavēr, amāverāmus. 11. Amavēro, amaverīmus. 12. Amem, amārem, amavērim, amavissem. 13. Amēm, amarēm, amaverīmus, amāvissēm. 14. Amet, ament. 15. Amāret, amārent. 16. Amavērit, amavērint. 17. Amavisset, amavissent. 18. Ama, amāte, amatōte. 19. Amāto, amanto.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

- ✓ 1. I praise, I was praising, I will praise. 2. He praises, they praise. 3. He will praise, they will praise. 4. He was praising, they were praising. 5. You were praising, you will praise, you praise. 6. He has loved, he had loved, he will have loved. 7. I have praised, I had praised, I shall have praised. 8. He may love, they may love. 9. Let him praise, let them praise. 10. He would blame, they would blame. 11. I should have praised, we should have praised. 12. Praise thou, praise ye.

FIRST CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXI.

Translate into English.

1. Amor, amābar, amābor. 2. Amāris, amabāris, amaberis. 3. Amātur, amantur. 4. Amabātur, amabantur.

in common; but they differ from each other in the endings, *o*, *am*, *ābo*. Originally, however, these forms had not only *am*, but *ama* in common, as *amo* was originally *ama-o*. This common basis *ama* is the stem of the verb. Such forms as *ama-t* and *ama-nt* show the stem in full. They are formed respectively by adding *t* and *nt* to the stem.

¹ Here the pupil will observe that the plural ending *bunt* differs from the singular ending *bit*, not only in having *n* before *t*, but also in changing *i* into *u*. BIT, BUNT.

5. Amabĭtur, amabuntur. 6. Amāmur, amabāmur, amabĭmur. 7. Amātus¹ sum, amātus eram, amātus ero. 8. Amātus es, amātus eras, amātus eris. 9. Amātus est, amāti¹ sunt. 10. Amātus erat, amāti erant. 11. Amātus erit, amāti erunt. 12. Amer, amārer, amātus sim, amātus essem. 13. Amēmur, amarēmur, amāti simus, amāti essēmus. 14. Amētur, amentur. 15. Amarētur, amarentur. 16. Amātus sit, amāti sint. 17. Amātus esset, amāti essent. 18. Amātor, amantor.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is praised, they are praised. 2. He was praised, they were praised. 3. He will be praised, they will be praised. 4. I am blamed, I was blamed, I shall be blamed. 5. You are loved, you are praised. 6. You were loved, you were praised. 7. You will be loved, you will be praised. 8. I have been blamed, you have been praised. 9. I had been blamed, you had been praised. 10. I shall have been blamed, you will have been praised. 11. You may be blamed, you might be blamed. 12. He would have been blamed, they would have been praised. 13. Let him be praised, let them be praised. 14. Be thou praised, be ye praised.

¹ The learner will observe, that, when the verb and the subject (expressed or implied) are in the Singular, the participle (*amātus*), which forms one element of the verb, is also in the Singular; and that, when the verb and the subject are in the Plural, the participle (*amāti*) is also in the Plural.

The form of the participle also varies with the *gender* of the subject, as well as with its *number*. Thus, if the subject is Masculine, the participle will be *amātus* in the Singular, and *amāti* in the Plural; if Feminine, *amāta* in the Singular, and *amātae* in the Plural; and, if Neuter, *amātum* in the Singular, and *amāta* in the Plural. Thus the participle in the compound tenses (i.e., in those which are made up of the participle and the auxiliary *sum*) agrees with the subject in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, like an adjective, according to Rule XXXV. 1, note.

FIRST CONJUGATION — BOTH VOICES.

EXERCISE XXII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Laudo, laudor.¹ 2. Laudābo, laudābor.² 3. Laudābam, laudābar.² 4. Laudem, lauder. 5. Laudārem, laudārer.² 6. Laudat, laudatur.¹ 7. Amābat, amabātur. 8. Amābit, amabītur. 9. Amet, amētur. 10. Amāret, amarētur. 11. Laudārent, laudarentur. 12. Ament, amentur. 13. Laudant, laudantur. 14. Amābant, amabantur. 15. Laudābunt, laudabuntur. 16. Amāvit, amātus est. 17. Laudavērat, laudātus erat. 18. Amavērit, amātus erit. 19. Lauda, laudāre. 20. Amāto, amātor. 21. Laudanto, laudantor.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He blames, he is blamed. 2. I was praising, I was praised. 3. You will praise, you will be praised. 4. He

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Voices, — the Active and the Passive, — and observe the difference between them. The Passive *laudor* differs from the Active *laudo* only in adding *r*; the Passive *laudābar* differs from the Active *laudābam* only in taking *r* in place of *m*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the first person of the Passive is formed from the first person of the Active by simply adding *r*; or, if the Active ends in *m*, by substituting *r* for *m*. Again: the Passive *laudatur* differs from the Active *laudat* only in adding *ur*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the third person of the Passive is formed from the third person of the Active by simply adding *ur*.

² Where must we look to find the meaning of these endings, — in the Vocabulary, or in the Grammar? and where to find the general meaning of the verb? See Suggestion II. To find the meaning of the verb to which *laudābor* belongs, for what form must we look in the Vocabulary? See Suggestion VII.

will blame, he will be blamed. 5. They will praise, they will be praised. 6. We blame, we are blamed. 7. He has praised, he has been praised. 8. They have blamed, they have been blamed. 9. He had praised, he had been praised. 10. They had blamed, they had been blamed. 11. He may praise, he may be praised. 12. He would blame, he would be blamed. 13. They may praise, they may be praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.¹

DIRECT OBJECT.

RULE V. — Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object² of an action is put in the Accusative.

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.*³ Cic. Libēra rem publicam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni sālūtem dēfendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

¹ It is thought advisable that the pupil should now commence a review of the grammatical forms which he has already learned. Accordingly, this Exercise will involve nouns of the First and of the Second Declension. The pupil should therefore carefully review those Declensions (48, 51). In connection with the subsequent Exercises, it is expected that the other Declensions and the other Grammatical forms will be reviewed in order, as will be indicated in the respective headings which precede the several Exercises.

² The *Direct Object* of an action is generally the *object*, person, or thing, on which the action is *directly* exerted; as, *sālūtem*, safety, in the third example; *defend* (what?) *the safety*. But the *Direct Object* is sometimes the *effect* of the action, i.e. the object produced by it; as, *mundum*, world, in the first example, — *made the world*.

³ In English, the object follows the verb; thus, in this example, *world* follows *made*; but in Latin the object usually precedes the verb: thus *mundum* precedes *aedificāvit*. So also, in the third example, *sālūtem* precedes *dēfendite*; but sometimes the object follows the verb: thus in the second example, *rem publicam* follows *libēra*.

MODEL FOR PARSING DIRECT OBJECTS.

Deūs mundūm aedificāvit, *God made the world.*

Mundum is a noun (39) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *mundo*. Singular: *mundus*, *mundi*, *mundo*, *mundum*, *munde*, *mundo*. Plural: *mundi*, *mundōrum*, *mundis*, *mundos*, *mundi*, *mundis*. It is of the Masculine gender, by 51; is in the Accusative Singular; and is the Direct Object of the transitive verb *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.: "The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative."

EXERCISE XXIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aedificō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to build.</i>
Arō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to plough.</i>
Cantō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to sing.</i>
Italiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Italy.</i>
Libērō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to liberate.</i>
Rēnōvō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to renew.</i>
Spērō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to hope.</i>
Tarquiniūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Tarquinius, Roman king.</i>
Thēmistōclēs, is, <i>m.</i>	<i>Themistocles, Athenian commander.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Lusciniā laudo.¹ 2. Lusciniā laudāmus. 3. Lusciniās laudat. 4. Lusciniās laudant. 5. Lusciniā laudātur. 6. Lusciniāe laudantur. 7. Patriā amāmus. 8. Pro patriā² pugnabimus.² 9. Nōne³ Themistōcles patriā liberāvit? 10. Patriā liberāvit. 11. Italiā liberāverunt. 12. Italiā liberāta⁴ est. 13. Tarquinius templū aedificā-

¹ *Lusciniā* is the Direct Object of *laudo*, according to Rule V.

² See Rule XXXII. page 26, and vocabulary page 73.

³ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

⁴ For agreement of participle with subject, see Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

vit. 14. Templum aedificābat. 15. Templa aedificavērant. 16. Templa aedificāta erant. 17. Templum aedificātum erit. 18. Puērū laudabāmus. 19. Puēri laudāti sunt. 20. Nonne¹ bellum renovātum est?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The nightingale is singing. 2. The nightingales are singing. 3. The nightingales will sing. 4. The boys have been praised. 5. Did you not¹ praise the boys?² 6. We praised the boys. 7. The boys will be praised. 8. Have we not¹ liberated Italy? 9. You have liberated Italy. 10. We will liberate the country. 11. We were ploughing the field. 12. Will you plough the field? 13. The field will be ploughed.

FIRST CONJUGATION—THIRD DECLENSION.³

ADVERBS.⁴

RULE LI.—Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs⁴ qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Sāpientes feliciter⁴ vivunt, *The wise live happily.* Cic. Facile⁴ doctissimus, *unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. Haud⁴ aliter, *not otherwise.* Virg.

¹ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

² The Latin word for *boys* in this sentence will be in the Accusative, according to Rule V., and will precede the verb.

³ The pupil should now review the Third Declension (55-64).

⁴ The Adverb is, therefore, the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. *Feliciter*, happily, is an adverb qualifying the verb *vivunt*, live (*live happily*). *Facile*, easily, unquestionably, is an adverb qualifying the adjective *doctissimus*, the most learned (*easily*, i.e. *unquestionably* the most learned). *Haud*, not, is an adverb qualifying the adverb *aliter*, otherwise (*not otherwise*). The adverb in Latin usually stands directly before the word which it qualifies, as in these examples.

MODEL FOR PARSING ADVERBS.

Sāpientēs feliciter vivunt, *The wise live happily.*

Feliciter is an adverb, and qualifies *vivunt*, according to Rule LI.:
 "Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS."

EXERCISE XXIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Elōquentiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>eloquence.</i>
Expugnō, arē, āvi, atum,	<i>to take, take by storm.</i>
Fortiter, <i>adv.</i>	<i>bravely.</i>
Juventūs, juventutis, <i>f.</i>	<i>youth.</i>
Ornō, arē, āvi, atum,	<i>to adorn, be an ornament to.</i>
Piētās, pietatis, <i>f.</i>	<i>filial affection, piety, duty.</i>
Pugnō, arē, āvi, atum,	<i>to fight.</i>
Servō, arē, āvi, atum,	<i>to preserve, keep, save.</i>
Volo, arē, āvi, atum,	<i>to fly.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Avis volat. 2. Aves volant. 3. Nonne¹ avis cantābat? 4. Aves cantābant. 5. Rex urbem² aedificāvit. 6. Urbs aedificāta³ est. 7. Urbes aedificātae³ erunt. 8. Milites fortiter⁴ pugnāvērunt. 9. Scipio⁵ milites laudāvit. 10. Scipio⁵ militum virtutem laudābat. 11. Scipionem laudāmus. 12. Scipio patrem servāvit. 13. Scipio urbem expugnāvit. 14. Urbs expugnāta est. 15. Milites patriam amant. 16. Milites⁵ pro patriā pugnābant. 17. Piētas pueros ornat. 18. Virtutes civitatem ornant.

¹ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

² *Urbem*, direct object of *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.

³ Why *aedificāta* in one case, and *aedificātae* in the other? Why not *aedificātus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

⁴ *Fortiter*, an Adverb qualifying *pugnāvērunt*, according to Rule LI.

⁵ In what order will you look out the words in this sentence? See Suggestion V.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The birds are singing. 2. Do you not¹ love birds?²
 3. We love birds.² 4. This bird will fly. 5. Did you not¹
 save the city? 6. The soldiers saved the city. 7. Shep-
 herds love the mountains. 8. We love virtue. 9. Is not
 virtue loved? 10. It is loved. 11. Do not the citizens
 praise the king? 12. They praise the king. 13. The king
 will be praised. 14. The virtue of the king is praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.³

EXERCISE XXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Convōcō, āre, āvī, ātūm,	to assemble, call together.
Duplicō, āre, āvī, ātūm,	to double, increase.
Dux, dūcis, m.	general, leader.
Fidēs, fidēi, f.	faith, fidelity, word, ⁴ promise.
Fūgō, āre, āvī, ātūm,	to rout.
Hōmō, hōmīnis, m.	man.
Sēnātūs, ūs, m.	senate.
Stimulō, āre, āvī, ātūm,	to stimulate.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Homīnes⁵ cantum lusciniæ⁶ laudant. 2. Cantus lus-
 ciniae laudatur. 3. Romūlus exercitum fugat. 4. Nonne

¹ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

² Remember that the *object* in Latin usually precedes the verb.

³ The pupil should now review these Declensions (116, 120).

⁴ To keep one's word, *fidem servare*: I keep my word, *fidem meam servo*, or *fidem servo*, as the Latin possessives, *meus*, my, *tuus*, your, etc., when not emphatic, are often omitted; when expressed, they usually follow their nouns.

⁵ In this sentence, what order will you follow, in accordance with Suggestion V., in looking out the words in the Vocabulary? In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *homīnes* (60), *mīlites* (58), *stimulāvit* (205)?

⁶ See Rule XVI. page 21.

exercitum fugavimus? 5. Exercitus fugatus est. 6. Exercitus fugatus erit. 7. Consul senatum convocavit. 8. Senatus convocatus est. 9. Senatus consulem laudavit. 10. Spes victoriae milites stimulavit. 11. Numerum dierum duplicavi. 12. Numerus dierum duplicatus est. ✓

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The boy has kept his word.¹ 2. Will you not keep your word? 3. We will keep our word. 4. The consul praised the fidelity of the citizens. 5. Will not the fidelity of the citizens be praised? 6. Will not the citizens praise the fidelity of the army? 7. They have praised the fidelity of the army. 8. Did not the general praise the army? 9. He praised the army. 10. The army will be praised. ✓

FIRST CONJUGATION — ADJECTIVES.²

EXERCISE XXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Ampliō, arē, avi, atūn,	<i>to enlarge.</i>
Condemnō, arē, avi, atūn,	<i>to condemn.</i>
Hannibāl, Hannibālis, m.	<i>Hannibal, Carthaginian general.</i>
Innocens, innocentis,	<i>innocent.</i>
Nōbilis, ē,	<i>noble.</i>
Nōvūs, ū, ūm,	<i>new.</i>
Occūpō, arē, avi, atūn,	<i>to occupy.</i>
Pūnicūs, ū, ūm,	<i>Carthaginian, Punic.</i>

¹ See note 4, preceding page.

² The pupil should now review Adjectives (146-162).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rex urbem novam¹ ampliābat. 2. Urbem novam ampliābunt. 3. Rex urbem pulchram¹ ampliavērat. 4. Urbs pulchra servāta² est. 5. Hannibal multas civitatē occupavit. 6. Judices hominem innocentissimum³ condemnāvērunt. 7. Num Punicum bellum renovātum est? 8. Nonne Punicum bellum renovātum est? 9. Punicum bellum renovātum est. 10. Romāni nobilissimas³ urbes expugnāvērunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not the brave soldiers save the city? 2. The brave soldiers will save the beautiful city. 3. The noble city will be saved. 4. We praise good boys. 5. Good boys will be praised. 6. Do you not praise diligent pupils? 7. Diligent pupils are praised. 8. The citizens praise the brave soldiers.

FIRST CONJUGATION — PRONOUNS.⁴

EXERCISE XXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Agis, Agidīs, *m.*
Dēlectō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,
Diligentiā, *ae, f.*
Nōn, *adv.*
Sālūtō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,
Suūs, ā, ūm,

Agis, king of Sparta.
to delight.
diligence.
not.
to salute.
his, her, us, their.

¹ See Rule XXXIII. p. 34.

² Why *servāta* rather than *servātus*? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, p. 54.

³ In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 162.

⁴ The pupil should now review Pronouns (182-191).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis hanc¹ urbem servābit? 2. Hanc urbem pulchram servabimus. 3. Quis te² salutāvit? 4. Pater meus¹ te salutāt. 5. Haec¹ vita te delectat. 6. Philosophia nos² delectat. 7. Omnia animalia se² amant. 8. Fratres tui¹ laudantur. 9. Fratres mei laudāti sunt. 10. Puer parentes suos³ amat. 11. Puēri boni parentes suos³ amant. 12. Parentes nostros amāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you blame me? 2. We do not⁴ blame you. 3. Whom do you blame? 4. We blame your brother. 5. This book delights me. 6. These books delighted us. 7. Did not⁵ your father praise you? 8. He praised us. 9. Did not⁶ king Agis praise your diligence? 10. Our parents praised our diligence. 11. Did your brother blame you? 12. He did not⁴ blame me. 13. He blamed himself. 14. He will be blamed.

¹ These Pronouns are all used as adjectives, and agree with their nouns like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 34. Pronouns thus used as adjectives generally precede their nouns; but the Possessive Pronouns, *meus, tuus*, etc. (185), generally follow their nouns, as in this Exercise.

² Personal Pronouns, it will be remembered, are used as substantives (184). They are accordingly governed like any other substantives. See Rule V. p. 70. Observe that the object precedes the verb.

³ The pupil will observe that *suos* in the tenth sentence must be rendered *his*, while in the eleventh it must be rendered *their*. Thus the meaning of the Possessive *suus* depends in part upon the *number* of the word to which it refers. It must be rendered *his* (*her, its*) when that word, as *puer* in the tenth sentence, is in the *Singular*; but it must be rendered *their* when that word, as *puēri* in the eleventh sentence, is in the *Plural*.

⁴ When a verb with a direct object has also an adverb qualifying it, the usual order is *Object, Adverb, Verb*; but the adverb *non*, not, may stand either *before* or *after* the object.

⁵ Nonne.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

207. Moneo, *I advise*. — STEM, *mōne*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mōneō,	mōnēre,	mōnuī,	mōnītūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.

mōneō
mōnēs
mōnēt;

PLURAL.

mōnēmūs
mōnētis
mōnent.

IMPERFECT.

I was advising.

mōnēbām
mōnēbās
mōnēbāt;

mōnēbāmūs
mōnēbatīs
mōnēbant.

FUTURE.

I shall or will advise.

mōnēbō
mōnēbīs
mōnēbīt;

mōnēbīmūs
mōnēbitīs
mōnēbunt.

PERFECT.

I advised or have advised.

mōnuī
mōnuistī
mōnuīt;

mōnuīmūs
mōnuistīs
mōnuērunt, or ērē.

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised.

mōnuērām
mōnuērās
mōnuērāt;

mōnuērāmūs
mōnuērātīs
mōnuērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have advised.

mōnuērō
mōnuērīs
mōnuērīt;

mōnuērīmūs
mōnuērītīs
mōnuērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may advise.

SINGULAR.

mōneām

mōneās

mōneāt ;

PLURAL.

mōneāmūs

mōneātīs

mōneant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should advise.

mōnērēm

mōnērēs

mōnērēt ;

mōnērēmūs

mōnērētīs

mōnērent.

PERFECT.

I may have advised.

mōnuērīm

mōnuērīs

mōnuērīt ;

mōnuērīmūs

mōnuērītīs

mōnuērīnt.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have advised.

mōnuissēm

mōnuissēs

mōnuissēt ;

mōnuissēmūs

mōnuissētīs

mōnuissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnē, advise thou ; | mōnētē, advise ye.

FUT. mōnētō, thou shalt advise, | mōnētōtē, ye shall advise,
mōnētō, he shall advise ; | mōnentō, they shall advise

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, to advise.

PERF. mōnuissē, to have advised.

FUT. mōnītūrū essē, to be
about to advise.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnens, advising.

FUT. mōnītūrū, about to advise.

GERUND.

Gen. mōnendī, of advising,

Dat. mōnendō, for advising,

Acc. mōnendū, advising,

Abl. mōnendō, by advising.

SUPINE.

Acc. mōnītū, to advise,

Abl. mōnītū, to advise, be advised.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

208. Moneor, *I am advised.* — STEM, *mōne*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mōneor,	mōnēri,	mōnītūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōneor	mōnēmūr
mōnēris, or rē	mōnēmīni
mōnētūr;	mōnentūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was advised.

mōnebār	mōnebāmūr
mōnebāris, or rē	mōnebāmīni
mōnebātūr;	mōnebantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be advised.

mōnebōr	mōnebīmūr
mōnebēris, or rē	mōnebīmīni
mōnebitūr;	mōnebuntūr.

PERFECT.

I have been or was advised.

mōnītūs sūm ¹	mōnītī sūmūs
mōnītūs ēs	mōnītī estīs
mōnītūs est;	mōnītī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been advised.

mōnītūs ērām ¹	mōnītī ērāmus
mōnītūs ērās	mōnītī ērātīs
mōnītūs erāt;	mōnītī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been advised.

mōnītūs ērō ¹	mōnītī ērīmūs
mōnītūs ēris	mōnītī ērītīs
mōnītūs ērīt;	mōnītī ērunt.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may be advised.

SINGULAR.

mōnēār
mōnēārī, or rē
mōnēātūr;

PLURAL.

mōnēār ūr
mōnēāmīni
mōneantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should be advised.

mōnērēr
mōnērērīs, or rē
mōnērētūr;

mōnērēmūr
mōnērēmīni
mōnēantūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been advised.

mōnītūs sīm¹
mōnītūs sis
mōnītūs sit;

mōnītī simūs
mōnītī sitīs
mōnītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have been advised.

mōnītūs essēm¹
mōnītūs essēs
mōnītūs essēt;

mōnītī essēmūs
mōnītī essētīs
mōnītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, be thou advised; | mōnēmīni, be ye advised.

FUT. mōnētōr, thou shalt be advised,

mōnētōr, he shall be advised;

mōnentōr, they shall be advised.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mōnēri, to be advised,

PERF. mōnītūs essē, to have been advised,

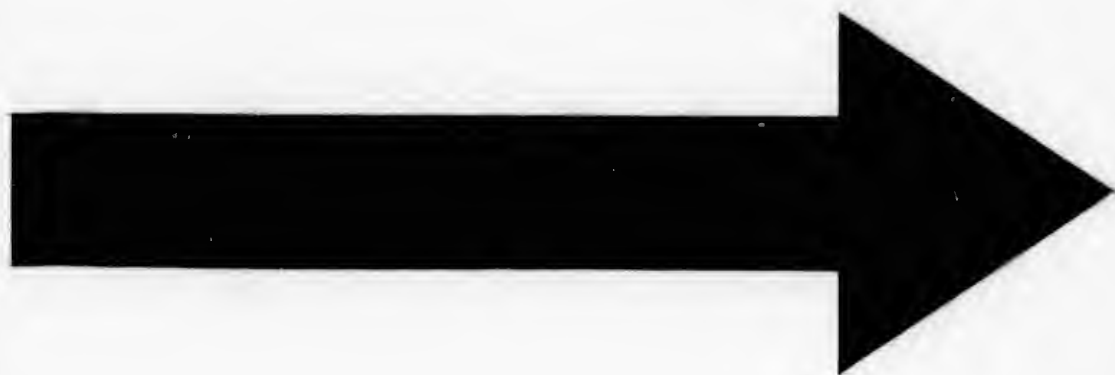
FUT. mōnītūm iri, to be about to be advised.

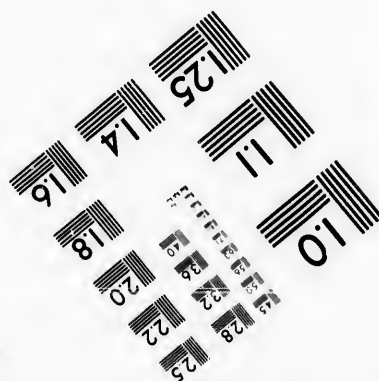
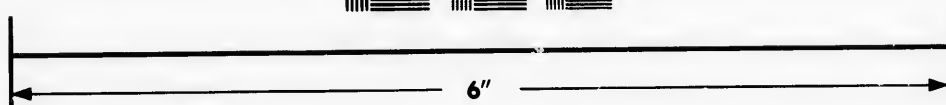
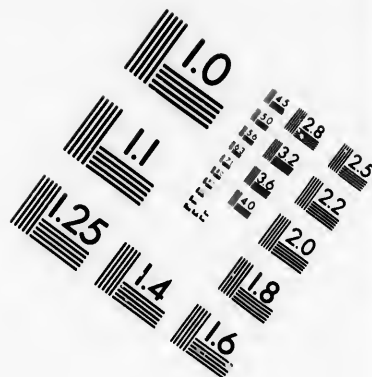
PARTICIPLE.

PERF. mōnītūs, advised,

GER.¹ mōnendūs, to be advised, deserving to be advised.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.





Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

1.3 2.8 2.5
1.5 3.2 2.2
1.6 3.6 2.0
1.8

10
0.1

SECOND CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mōneō, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm,	<i>to advise.</i>
Pāreō, pārērē, pārui, pārītūm,	<i>to obey.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneo, monēbam, monēbo.¹ 2. Mones, monētis. 3. Monet, monent. 4. Monēmus, monebāmus, monebīmus. 5. Monēbant, monēbunt. 6. Monui, monuēram, monuēro. 7. Monuīmus, monuerāmus, monuerīmus. 8. Monuit, monuērunt. 9. Monuērat, monuērant. 10. Monuērit, monuērint. 11. Moneam, monērem, monuērim, monuissem. 12. Moneat, moneant. 13. Monēret, monērent. 14. Monuērit, monuērint. 15. Monuisset, monuissent.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You advise, you were advising, you will advise. 2. He obeys, they obey. 3. He was obeying, they were obeying. 4. He will advise, they will advise. 5. He has obeyed, he had obeyed, he will have obeyed. 6. They have advised, they had advised, they will have advised. 7. I have advised, we have advised. 8. I had advised, I had obeyed. 9. He may advise, he may obey.

¹ The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe wherein they differ from each other.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cantŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	<i>to sing.</i>
Spērŏ, ārĕ, āvī. ātŭm,	<i>to hope.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sperat, paret.¹ 2. Sperant, parent. 3. Sperāmus, parēmus. 4. Sperābat, parēbat. 5. Sperābant, parēbant. 6. Sperābam, parēbam. 7. Sperabāmus, parebāmus. 8. Sperabīmus, parebīmus. 9. Sperābo, parēbo. 10. Sperāvi, parui. 11. Speravēram, paruēram. 12. Speravēro, paruēro. 13. Speravīmus, paruīmus. 14. Speravērat, paruērat. 15. Speravērint, paruērint. 16. Sperāte, parēte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I sing, I advise. 2. I was singing, I was advising. 3. I will sing, I will advise. 4. He will hope, he will obey. 5. They will hope, they will obey. 6. They were singing, they were advising. 7. They sing, they advise. 8. He has hoped, he has obeyed. 9. They have hoped, they have obeyed. 10. He had sung; he had obeyed. 11. They had sung, they had obeyed. 12. We had hoped, we had advised. 13. We would sing, we would obey.

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Conjugations, — the First and the Second, — and should carefully observe the difference between them.

SECOND CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE.
OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXX.

I. Vocabulary.

Aurūm, i, <i>n.</i>	gold.
Flōs, flōris, <i>m.</i>	flower.
Hābeō, hābēre, hābuī, hābitūm,	to have, hold.
Mēreō, mērere, mēruī, mēritūm,	to deserve, merit.
Philōsōphūs, i, <i>m.</i>	philosopher.
Pondūs, pondēris, <i>n.</i>	weight, mass.
Praebeō, praebere, praebuī, praebitūm,	to furnish, give.
Praemiūm, ii, <i>n.</i>	reward.
Tāceō, tācere, tācuī, tācitūm,	to be silent.
Terreō, terrere, terruī, territūm,	to frighten, terrify.

II. Translate into English.

1. Puer librum habet. 2. Puēri libros habent. 3. Libros
utiles¹ habemus. 4. Librum utilem habuisti. 5. Nonne
bonum¹ amicum habēbis? 6. Bonum amicum habēbo. 7.
Bonos amicos habuimus. 8. Rex amicos habēbat. 9. Rex
aurum habēbat. 10. Rex² magnum auri pondus³ habuerat.
11. Gloriam veram habebitis. 12. Ver praebet flores. 13.
Ver praebēbit flores. 14. Philōsōphus tacēbat. 15. Dis-
cipulus praemium meret.

¹ Observe that the Latin adjective may either precede or follow its noun; though it seems more frequently to follow, unless it is emphatic.

² In this sentence, endeavor, in accordance with Suggestion IV., to discover the *subject*, *verb*, and *object*, before looking out the words in the Vocabulary. In what order will you look out the words in accordance with Suggestion V.?

³ When a noun is qualified by both an adjective and a genitive, as *pondus* by *magnum* and *auri*, the adjective usually precedes both nouns, and is followed by the genitive, as in this example: *magnum auri pondus*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who has my book? 2. I have your book. 3. Which book have you? 4. I have three¹ books. 5. My brother has ten books. 6. The king had a golden crown. 7. Did he not have many friends? 8. He had many friends. 9. You will have true friends. 10. The pupils are silent.² 11. Will you not be silent? 12. We will be silent.

SECOND CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneor, monēbar, monēbor. 2. Monēmur, monebāmur, monebīmur. 3. Moneātur, moneantur. 4. Monerētur, monerentur. 5. Monītus est, monīti sunt. 6. Monītus erat, monīti erant. 7. Monītus erit, monīti erunt. 8. Monētor, monentor. 9. Monet, monētur. 10. Monent, monentur. 11. Monēbat, Monebātur. 12. Monēbant, monebantur. 13. Monēbit, monebīt-r. 14. Monēbunt, monebuntur. 15. Monēmus, monēmur. 16. Monebāmus, Monebāmur. 17. Monebīmus, monebīmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is advised, they are advised. 2. I was terrified, we were terrified. 3. He will be advised, they will be advised. 4. You have been terrified, I have been terrified. 5. He had been advised, he had been terrified. 6. I shall have been advised, I shall have been terrified. 7. I advise, I am advised. 8. I was advising, I was advised. 9. I shall advise, I shall be advised. 10. They terrify, they are terrified. 11. They were terrifying, they were terrified. 12. They will terrify, they will be terrified.

¹ Place the Numeral *before* the noun.

² *Are silent* is to be rendered by the Latin verb *taceo*.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Admōneō, admōnērē, admōnuī, admōnītūm,	<i>to admonish.</i>
Amō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to love.</i>
Invitō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to invite.</i>
Laudo, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to praise.</i>
Terreo, terrērē, terrui, terrītūm,	<i>to terrify.</i>
Vitupero, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to blame.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitātur, terrētur. 2. Invitantur, terrentur. 3. Invitāmur, terrēmur. 4. Invitabāmur, terrebāmur. 5. Invitabātur, terrebātur. 6. Invitabantur, terrebantur. 7. Invitabuntur, terrebuntur. 8. Invitabītur, terrebītur. 9. Invitabor, terrēbor. 10. Invitātus sum, terrītus sum. 11. Invitāti sumus, terrīti sumus. 12. Invitātus est, terrītus est. 13. Invitāti sunt, terrīti sunt. 14. Invitāti erant, terrīti erant. 15. Invitātus erat, terrītus erat.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am invited, I am admonished. 2. You are invited, you are admonished. 3. He was praised, he was advised. 4. They were praised, they were advised. 5. You will be invited, you will be admonished. 6. He has been blamed, he has been terrified. 7. They had been loved, they had been admonished. 8. They will have been invited, they

will have been admonished. 9. I may be invited, I may be admonished. 10. I should be invited, I should be admonished.

SECOND CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Apūd, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>near, before, among.</i>
Exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitū,	<i>to exercise, train.</i>
Frāter, frātris, <i>m.</i>	<i>brother.</i>
Māgistēr, māgistri, <i>m.</i>	<i>master, teacher.</i>
Mēmōriā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>memory.</i>
Puēr, puēri, <i>m.</i>	<i>boy.</i>
Quis, quae, quid, ¹	<i>who, which, what?</i>
Rectē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>rightly.</i>
Tuūs, ū, ūm,	<i>your, yours.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis monētur? 2. Nonne puer monētur? 3. Puer recte monētur. 4. Puēri recte monentur. 5. Discipūli recte monīti sunt. 6. Discipūlus recte monītus est. 7. Frater tuus recte admonītus erit. 8. Fratres tui recte admonīti erunt. 9. Nonne admonīti sumus? 10. Recte admonīti sumus. 11. Memoria exercētur. 12. Memoria

¹ For the declension of the Interrogative Pronoun *quis*, see 188.

exerceatur.¹ 13. Memoria exercebitur. 14. Discipuli apud magistros exercentur.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Were not the boys terrified? 2. They were terrified. 3. Let² the pupils be admonished. 4. They have been admonished. 5. Who will be advised? 6. These boys will be advised. 7. Has your memory been exercised? 8. My memory has been exercised. 9. Was not the general terrified? 10. The general himself³ was not terrified. 11. The soldiers were terrified.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Cāmillūs, i, m.	Camillus, Roman general.
Exspectō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to await, expect.
Hostis, is, m. and f.	enemy.
Ingens, ingentis,	huge, large, great.
Lēgiō, lēgiōnis, f.	legion, body of soldiers.
Nōn, adv.	not.
Nūmērūs, i, m.	number.
Optō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to wish for, desire.
Pēcūniā, ae, f.	money.

¹ *Exerceatur*; the Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*. See 196. I. 2.

² *Let be admonished* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

³ *Himself* = *ipse*. See 186.

Philōsōphūs, i, m.	<i>philosopher.</i>
Praeceptōr, praeceptōris, m.	<i>teacher.</i>
Proeliū, ii, n.	<i>battle.</i>
Rōmānūs, i, m.	<i>Roman, a Roman.</i>
Sūpērj, ūrē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to conquer.</i>
Vērēcundiā, ae, f.	<i>modesty.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Camillus hostes superāvit. 2. Hostes superāti sunt.
 3. Omnes discipūli paruērānt.¹ 4. Romāni hostem expectā-
 bant. 5. Romāni² ingentem hostium numērum³ expecta-
 vērānt.¹ 6. Hostes proelium expectābant. 7. Praeceptor
 tacēbat. 8. Discipūli tacēbant. 9. Verecundia juventūtem
 ornat. 10. Philosophus pecuniam non habet. 11. Philos-
 ophi pecuniam non optant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are you expecting me? 2. We are expecting you.
 3. Did you not await the enemy?⁴ 4. We awaited the
 enemy. 5. Have you not a good memory? 6. I have a
 good memory. 7. Will the soldiers obey? 8. The brave
 soldiers will obey. 9. Camillus had an army. 10. He
 praised the army. 11. Did you advise the boy? 12. We
 advised the boys. 13. Were not the enemy put to flight?⁵
 14. They were put to flight.

¹ In accordance with Suggestion VII. 3, for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 205, 207.

² Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

³ *Ingentem hostium numērum*, for arrangement see note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX.

⁴ Put the Latin word in the plural.

⁵ *Put to flight* is to be rendered by a single Latin verb.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

209. Rego, *I rule.* — STEM, *reg.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
<i>rēgō,</i>	<i>rēgēre,</i>	<i>rexī,</i>	<i>rectūm.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I rule.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>rēgō</i>	<i>rēgimūs</i>
<i>rēgis</i>	<i>rēgitis</i>
<i>rēgit ;</i>	<i>rēgunt.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling.

<i>rēgebām</i>	<i>rēgebāmūs</i>
<i>rēgebās</i>	<i>rēgebātis</i>
<i>rēgebāt ;</i>	<i>rēgebant.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will rule.

<i>rēgām</i>	<i>rēgēmūs</i>
<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>rēgētis</i>
<i>rēgēt ;</i>	<i>rēgent.</i>

PERFECT.

I ruled or have ruled.

<i>rexī</i>	<i>reximūs</i>
<i>rexistī</i>	<i>rexistis</i>
<i>rexīt ;</i>	<i>rexerunt, or ēre.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

<i>rexerām</i>	<i>rexerāmūs</i>
<i>rexerās</i>	<i>rexerātis</i>
<i>rexerāt ;</i>	<i>rexerant.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have ruled.

<i>rexerō</i>	<i>rexerimūs</i>
<i>rexerīs</i>	<i>rexeritis</i>
<i>rexerīt ;</i>	<i>rexerint.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may rule.

SINGULAR.

regam

regas

regat ;

PLURAL.

regamūs

regātis

regant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should rule.

regērem

regērēs

regēret ;

regērēmūs

regērētis

regērent.

PERFECT.

I may have ruled.

rexerim

rexeris

rexerit ;

rexerimūs

rexeritis

rexerint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have ruled.

rexissēm

rexissēs

rexissēt ;

rexissēmūs

rexissētis

rexissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. regē, rule thou ;

FUT. regitō, thou shalt rule,

regitō, he shall rule ;

regitē, rule ye.

regitōtē, ye shall rule,

reguntō, they shall rule.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. regēre, to rule.

PERF. rexisse, to have ruled.

FUT. recturūs esse, to be about
to rule.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. regens, ruling.

FUT. recturūs, about to rule.

GERUND.

Gen. regendi, of ruling,

Dat. regendō, for ruling,

Acc. regendū, ruling,

Abl. regendō, by ruling.

SUPINE.

Acc. rectū, to rule,

Abl. rectū, to rule, be ruled

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

210. Regor, *I am ruled.* — STEM, *reg*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
rēgōr,	rēgī,	rectūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
rēgōr		rēgimur
rēgēris, or rē		rēgimini
rēgitur;		rēguntur.
IMPERFECT.		
<i>I was ruled.</i>		
rēgebār		rēgebāmur
rēgebāris, or rē		rēgebāmini
rēgebātur;		rēgebantur.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be ruled.

rēgār	rēgemur
rēgēris, or rē	rēgemini
rēgētur;	rēgentur.

PERFECT.

I have been or was ruled.

rectūs sūm ¹	rectī sūmūs
rectūs ēs	rectī estis
rectūs est;	rectī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been ruled.

rectūs ērām ¹	rectī ērāmūs
rectūs ērās	rectī ērātis
rectūs ērāt;	rectī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been ruled.

rectūs ērō ¹	rectī ērimūs
rectūs ēris	rectī ēritis
rectūs ērit;	rectī ērunt.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may be ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rēgār	rēgāmūr
rēgāris, or rē	rēgāminī
rēgātūr ;	rēgantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should be ruled.

rēgērēr	rēgērēmūr
rēgērēris, or rē	rēgērēmīnī
rēgērētūr ;	rēgērentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled.

rectūs sīm ¹	rectī simūs
rectūs sis	rectī sitis
rectūs sūt ;	rectī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have been ruled.

rectūs essēm ¹	rectī essēmūs
rectūs essēs	rectī essētis
rectūs essēt ;	rectī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgērē, be thou ruled ;	rēgīmīnī, be ye ruled.
FUT. rēgītōr, thou shalt be ruled, rēgītōr, he shall be ruled ;	rēguntōr, they shall be ruled.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgī, to be ruled.	
PERF. rectūs essē, to have been ruled.	PERF. rectūs, ruled.
FUT. rectūm irī, to be about to be ruled.	GER. ¹ rēgendūs, to be ruled.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dūcō, ērē, duxī, ductūm,	to lead.
Rēgō, ērē, rexī, rectūm,	to rule, govern.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rego, regēbam, regam. 2. Regīmus, regebāmus, regēmus. 3. Regītis, regis. 4. Regēbas, regebātis. 5. Regābant, regēbat. 6. Reget, regent. 7. Rexērunt, rexit. 8. Rexi, rexeram, rexero. 9. Rexīmus, rexerāmus, rexerīmus. 10. Regas, regēres, rexēris, rexisses. 11. Regātis, regerētis, rexerītis, rexissētis. 12. Regam, regāmus. 13. Regeremus, regērem. 14. Rexerit, rexerint. 15. Rexissent, rexisset. 16. Rege, regite.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 2. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 3. They lead, they rule. 4. They were leading, they were ruling. 5. They will lead, they will rule. 6. You have led, you have ruled. 7. He had led, he had ruled. 8. They had led, they had ruled. 9. He will have led, he will have ruled. 10. They may lead, they may rule. 11. He would lead, he would rule. 12. They would lead, they would rule. 13. We should have led, we should have ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS — ACTIVE
VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dicō, dicēŕ, dixī, dictūm,	<i>to say, tell, speak.</i>
Vōcō, āŕē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to call.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocat, tacet, dicit.¹ 2. Vocant, tacent, dicunt. 3. Vocābant, tacēbant, dicēbant. 4. Vocābo, tacēbo, dicam. 5. Vocavīmus, tacuīmus, dixīmus. 6. Vocāvi, tacui, dixi. 7. Vocaverant, tacuerunt, dixerunt. 8. Vocaverat, tacuerat, dixerat. 9. Vocaverint, tacuerint, dixerint. 10. Vocem, taceam, dicam. 11. Vocarent, tacèrent, dicèrent. 12. Vocāte, tacēte, dicite.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I invite, I admonish, I lead. 2. We call, we are silent, we speak. 3. We were inviting, we were admonishing, we were leading. 4. I shall call, I shall be silent, I shall speak. 5. He has invited, he has been silent, he has led. 6. He had praised, he had obeyed, he had ruled. 7. They had blamed, they had advised, they had spoken. 8. He may call, he may admonish, he may rule.

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the three Conjugations here represented, — the First, the Second, and the Third, — and should carefully observe the difference between them. The advantages of such a course are twofold: first, it teaches the pupil to distinguish the several Conjugations from each other, which is one of the most important lessons to be learned in the study of the language; and, secondly, it tends to form in him, thus early, the habit of close and accurate observation, the habit of marking differences and of tracing resemblances in kindred forms, which is of vital importance in the whole course of classical study.

THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

I. Vocabulary.

Anīmūs, ī, m.	mind, passion.
Bēnē, adv.	well.
Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis, f.	eclipse.
Disertē, adv.	clearly, eloquently.
Ēducō, ēducērē, ēduxī, ēductū,	to lead forth.
Indicō, indicērē, indicī, indictū,	to declare.
Lātīnē, adv.	in Latin.
Praedicō, praedicērē, praedixī, praedictū,	to predict, foretell.
Sāpientēr, adv.	wisely.
Thālēs, īs, m.	Thales, a philosopher.
Tullūs, ī, m.	Tullus, a Roman name.
Vērūm, ī, n.	truth.

II. Translate into English.

1. Bene dixisti. 2. Nonne Cicēro in senātu dixērat?
 3. Cicēro diserte dicēbat. 4. Oratōres diserte dicent. 5.
 Philosōphus sapienter dixit. 6. Philosōphi sapienter dixē-
 rant. 7. Oratōres Latine dixērunt. 8. Caesar legiōnes
 eduxit. 9. Hannībal exercītum in Italiam duxit. 10. Quis
 bellum indixit? 11. Tullus bellum indixit. 12. Thales
 defectiōnem solis praedixit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who will speak the truth? 2. Have we not spoken
 the truth? 3. You have spoken the truth. 4. Will not
 the general lead forth the army? 5. He has led forth the
 army. 6. Do you not govern your mind? 7. We govern
 our minds. 8. Did you predict this war? 9. We did not
 predict the war. 10. Who has declared war? 11. The
 Romans have declared war.

THIRD CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Regor, regēbar, regar. 2. Regīmur, regebāmur, regēmur. 3. Regar, regāmur. 4. Regerētur, regerentur. 5. Rectus est, rectus erat, rectus erit. 6. Recti sunt, recti erant, recti erunt. 7. Regit, regitur. 8. Regunt, reguntur. 9. Regēbat, regebātur. 10. Regēbant, regebantur. 11. Reget, regētur. 12. Regent, regentur. 13. Regīmus, regimur. 14. Regebāmus, regebāmur. 15. Regēmus, regēmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is ruled, they are ruled. 2. I am ruled, I am led. 3. We are ruled, we are led. 4. He was ruled, they were ruled. 5. He will be ruled, they will be ruled. 6. We have been ruled, we have been led. 7. I lead, I am led. 8. We lead, we are led. 9. We were ruling, we were ruled. 10. He was leading, he was led. 11. They may rule, they may be ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—
PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocor, moneor, ducor. 2. Vocāmur, monēmur, ducimur. 3. Vocātur, monētur, ducitur. 4. Vocabātur, monebātur, ducebātur. 5. Vocabantur, monebantur, ducebantur. 6. Vocabuntur, monebuntur, ducentur. 7. Vocā-

tus es, monitus es, ductus es. 8. Vocati estis, moniti estis, ducti estis. 9. Vocatus eram, monitus eram, ductus eram. 10. Vocatus erit, monitus erit, ductus erit.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is invited, he is admonished, he is led. 2. We were called, we were advised, we were ruled. 3. He will be called, he will be advised, he will be ruled. 4. He may be invited, he may be admonished, he may be led. 5. He has been called, he has been advised, he has been led. 6. They have been called, they have been advised, they have been led.

THIRD CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XL.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mundus, i, m.	world.
Semper, adv.	always, ever.
Verum, i, n.	truth.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Mundus regitur. 2. Omnis hic mundus semper rectus est. 3. Hic mundus semper regitur. 4. Haec civitas bene regitur. 5. Hae civitates bene reguntur. 6. Civitates rectae sunt. 7. Animus regatur. 8. Exercitus in Italiam ductus est. 9. Multi exercitus in Italiam ducti erant. 10. Bellum indictum¹ erat. 11. Multa bella indicta¹ sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not the army led forth? 2. The army was led forth. 3. Has not this state been well governed? 4. This

¹ Why *indictum* in one example, and *indicta* in the other? Why not rather *indictus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

state has been well governed. 5. Will not the truth be spoken? 6. The truth has been spoken. 7. Let¹ the truth always be spoken. 8. Would not war have been declared? 9. War would have been declared.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—
MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Gallus, i, m.	Gallus, a proper name.
Hirundō, hirundinis, f.	swallow.
Lūnā, ae, f.	moon.
Nuntiō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to proclaim, announce.
Sensūs, ūs, m.	feeling, perception.
Supplicium, ii, n.	punishment.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Hirundines adventum veris nuntiant. 2. Hirundines adventum veris nuntiavērant. 3. Discipuli laudabuntur. 4. Gallus defectiones solis praedixit. 5. Defectiones lunae praedixit. 6. Defectiones lunae praedicuntur. 7. Omne animal sensus habet. 8. Puēri tacēbant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. This boy has not observed the law. 2. Good citizens will observe the laws. 3. Let the laws be observed. 4. Who has your book? 5. That boy has my book. 6. You shall have my book. 7. What did you say? 8. I spoke the truth. 9. The truth would have been spoken.

¹ Let be spoken, render by the Latin Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

211. Audio, *I hear*. — STEM, *audi*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
audiō,	audīre,	audivi,	audītum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.

audiō
audis
audit;

PLURAL.

audimūs
auditis
audiunt.

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing.

audiebām
audiebās
audiebat;

audiebāmūs
audiebatīs
audiebant.

FUTURE.

I shall or will hear.

audiām
audies
audiet;

audiemūs
audietīs
audient.

PERFECT.

I heard or have heard.

audivi
audivisti
audivit;

audivimūs
audivistīs
audiverunt, or erē.

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audiverām
audiverās
audiverāt;

audiverāmūs
audiverātīs
audiverant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have heard.

audiverō
audiveris
audiverit;

audiverimūs
audiveritīs
audiverint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may hear.

SINGULAR.

audiām
audiās
audiāt;

PLURAL.

audiāmūs
audiātis
audiānt.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should hear.

audirēm
audirēs
audirēt;

audirēmūs
audirētis
audirent.

PERFECT.

I may have heard.

audivērim
audivēris
audivērit;

audivērimūs
audivēritis
audivērint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have heard.

audivissēm
audivissēs
audivissēt;

audivissēmūs
audivissētis
audivissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audi, hear thou;

auditē, hear ye.

FUT. auditō, thou shalt hear,
auditō, he shall hear;

auditōtē, ye shall hear,
audiuntō, they shall hear.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audirē, to hear.

PERS. audivissē, to have heard.

FUT. auditurūs esse, to be
about to hear.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audiens, hearing.

FUT. auditorūs, about to hear.

GERUND.

Gen. audiendi, of hearing.

Dat. audiendō, for hearing.

Acc. audiendū, hearing.

Abl. audiendō, by hearing.

SUPINE.

Acc. auditū, to hear.

Abl. auditū, to hear, be heard.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

212. Audior, *I am heard*. — STEM, *audi*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
audiōr,	audiri,	auditūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.

audiōr
audiris, or rē
auditūr;

PLURAL.

audiāmūr
audiāminī
audiuntūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was heard.

audiēbār
audiēbāris, or rē
audiēbatūr;

audiēbāmūr
audiēbāminī
audiēbāntūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be heard.

audiār
audiēris, or rē
audiētūr;

audiēmūr
audiēmīnī
audiēntūr.

PERFECT.

I have been heard.

auditūs sūm¹
auditūs es
auditūs est;

auditī sūmūs
auditī estis
auditī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been heard.

auditūs ērām¹
auditūs ērās
auditūs ērāt;

auditī ērāmūs
auditī ērātis
auditī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been heard.

auditūs ērō¹
auditūs ēris
auditūs erit;

auditī ērimūs
auditī eritis
auditī erunt.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may be heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiār	audiāmūr
audiārīs, or rē	audiāmīni
audiātūr;	audiantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should be heard.

audirēr	audirēmūr
audirērīs, or rē	audirēmīni
audirētūr;	audirentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been heard.

auditūs sīm ¹	auditī sīmūs
auditūs sis	auditī sitīs
auditūs sīt;	auditī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have been heard.

auditūs.essēm ¹	auditī essēmūs
auditūs essēs	auditī essētīs
auditūs essēt;	auditī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audirē, be thou heard;	audimīni, be ye heard.
FUT. auditōr, thou shalt be heard, auditōr, he shall be heard;	audiuntōr, they shall be heard.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audiri, to be heard.	PERF. auditūs, heard.
PERF. auditūs essē, to have been heard.	GER. ¹ audiendūs, to be heard.
FUT. auditūm iri, to be about to be heard.	

¹ See ~~see~~ foot-notes. 50

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Custōdiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	to guard.
Dormiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	to sleep.
Erūdiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	to instruct, refine, educate.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Audis, audiebās, audies. 2. Auditis, audiebātis, audietis. 3. Audio, audīmus. 4. Audiēbam, audiebāmus. 5. Audiam, audiēmus. 6. Audivimus, audiverāmus, audiverimus. 7. Audivi, audivēram, audivēro. 8. Audivit, audivērunt. 9. Audiam, audirem, audivērim, audivissem. 10. Audiāmus, audirēmus, audiverimus, audivissēmus. 11. Audito, auditōte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I hear, I guard. 2. We hear, we guard. 3. He was hearing, they were sleeping. 4. He was sleeping, they were hearing. 5. He will hear, they will hear. 6. We have slept, you have heard. 7. I had heard, I had guarded. 8. He may hear, they may sleep. 9. They may hear, he may sleep. 10. He might hear, they might sleep. 11. He might sleep, they might hear.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitat, admōnet, ducit, custōdit. 2. Invitant, admōnent, ducunt, custodiunt. 3. Invitābant, admonēbant, du-

cēbant, custodiēbant. 4. Invitābat, admonēbat, ducēbat, custodiēbat. 5. Invitavēram, admonuēram, duxēram, audivēram. 6. Invitaverāmus, admonuerāmus, duxerāmus, audiverāmus. 7. Invitavērim, admonuērim, duxērim, custodivērim. 8. Invitavērunt, admonuērunt, duxērunt, audivērunt.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We invite, we admonish, we lead, we instruct. 2. I was inviting, I was admonishing, I was leading, I was instructing. 3. We were praising, we were obeying, we were speaking, we were instructing. 4. He will blame, he will advise, he will speak, he will instruct. 5. I have invited, you have obeyed, he has led, they have guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XLIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Arctē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>closely, soundly.</i>
Mūniō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>to fortify.</i>
Sermō, sermōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>discourse, conversation.</i>
Thrāsýbúlus, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>Thrasybulus, Athenian general.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cives urbem custodiēbant. 2. Urbem custodiēmus. 3. Milītes templum custodiunt. 4. Verum audītis. 5. Verum audite. 6. Verum audiverāmus. 7. Verba tua audimus. 8. Verba mea audivisti. 9. Oratiōnem tuam audivi. 10. Sermōnem audiēbam. 11. Puēri arcte dormiunt. 12. Puēri cantum luscinae audiēbant. 13. Thrasybūlus urbem munivit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not hear us? 2. We hear you. 3. Who heard the oration? 4. We heard the oration. 5. The pupils heard the conversation. 6. They did not hear your oration. 7. The citizens are fortifying the city. 8. Who will guard this beautiful city? 9. The brave soldiers will guard the city. 10. Will you guard the temple? 11. We will guard the temple.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLV.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Audīmur, audiebāmur, audiēmur. 2. Audiātur, audiuntur. 3. Audīrer, audirēmur. 4. Audītus sum, audī sumus. 5. Audīti erāmus, auditus eram. 6. Audītus erit, audīti erunt. 7. Audit, auditur. 8. Audiunt, audiuntur. 9. Audiet, audiētur. 10. Audirem, audīrer. 11. Audiēbam, audiēbar. 12. Audiēbat, audiebātur. 13. Audivit, auditus est. 14. Audivērat, auditus erat.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

• 1. I am instructed, we are instructed. 2. He will be instructed, they will be instructed. 3. They have been heard, they have been instructed. 4. They had been heard, he had been instructed. 5. He was instructing, he was instructed. 6. They are instructing, they are instructed. 7. We have heard, you have been heard. 8. You have instructed, we have been instructed. 9. I have heard, you have been heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLVI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitāris, admonēris, educēris, custodiris. 2. Invitantur, admonentur, educuntur, custodiuntur. 3. Invitātur, admonētur, educitur, custoditur. 4. Invitabitur, admonebitur, educetur, custodiētur. 5. Invitabatur, admonebatur, educebatur, custodiebatur. 6. Invitatus sum, admonitus sum, eductus sum, custoditus sum. 7. Invitāti erant, admonīti erant, educti erant, custodīti erant. 8. Invitāti essēmus, educti essēmus. 9. Admonītus esses, custoditus esses.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is called, he is terrified, he is led forth, he is guarded. 2. They are called, they are terrified, they are led forth, they are guarded. 3. They will be loved, they will be advised, they will be led, they will be heard. 4. I have been blamed, I have been admonished, you had been ruled, you had been guarded. 5. You had been blamed, I had been admonished. 6. You have been ruled, I have been guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XLVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Bellūm, i, n.

Bēnignē, adv.

Civīlis, ē.

war.

kindly.

civil.

Egrēgiē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>excellently.</i>
Filiūs, <i>ii, m.</i>	<i>son.</i>
Finiō, <i>irē, ivi, itūm,</i>	<i>to finish, bring to a close.</i>
Lēgātiō, <i>lēgātiōnis, f.</i>	<i>embassy.</i>
Vox, <i>vōcis, f.</i>	<i>voice.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Vox audita¹ est. 2. Voces audiuntur. 3. Cantus lusciniæ auditur. 4. Cantus lusciniarum audiētur. 5. Urbs munita erat. 6. Urbes munientur. 7. Templum custodiētur. 8. Tempa custodiuntur. 9. Legatio benigne audita est. 10. Haec legatio benigne audiētur. 11. Verba tua benigne audientur. 12. Filii regis egregie erudiuntur. 13. Bellum civile finitum¹ est.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Was not the orator heard? 2. The renowned orator was kindly heard. 3. Let the city be fortified.² 4. Let the temples be guarded. 5. The city has been fortified. 6. The temples will be guarded. 7. Let the war be brought to a close. 8. Let the boys be instructed. 9. Let the words of the instructor be heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Athēniensis, <i>is, m. and f.</i>	<i>an Athenian.</i>
Cānis, <i>cānis, m. and f.</i>	<i>dog.</i>
Cōlō, <i>cōlēre, cōlui, cultūm,</i>	<i>to practise, cultivate.</i>
Cūm, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>with.</i>

¹ Why *audita* and *finitum*, instead of *auditus* and *finitus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

² Let be fortified is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

Firmō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to strengthen.</i>
Gre ^x , grēgīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>herd, flock.</i>
Illustrō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to illumine.</i>
Jungō, jungēre, junxi, junctūm,	<i>to join.</i>
Lābor, lāboris, <i>m.</i>	<i>labor.</i>
Mōdestiā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>modesty.</i>
Ovis, ōvis, <i>f.</i>	<i>sheep.</i>
Portus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>port, harbor.</i>
Prudentiā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>prudence.</i>
Terrā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>earth.</i>
Vālētūdō, vālētūdīnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>health.</i>
Vāriētās, vāriētātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>variety.</i>
Viōlō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>violate.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sol terram illustrat. 2. Modestia pueros ornat. 3. Discipuli memoriam exercent. 4. Discipuli tui memoriam exercēbant. 5. Canes gregem custodiēbant. 6. Greges ovium custodiuntur. 7. Praeceptōres juventutē erudient. 8. Labor valetudinē tuam firmābit. 9. Variētas nos delectat. 10. Athenienses portum muniverunt. 11. Philosophia nos erudit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Good men love virtue. 2. Virtue will always¹ be loved. 3. Let virtue be always practised. 4. We will always practise virtue. 5. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 6. They will be punished. 7. Will you instruct these boys? 8. We will instruct good boys. 9. Who² led this army into Italy? 10. Hannibal led the army into Italy.

¹ For the syntax of adverbs, and for their place in the Latin sentence, see Rule LI. and note 4, p. 72.

² Which form of the Interrogative should be used, *quis* or *qui*? See 188.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — VERBS IN IO.

221. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in *io, ior*, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels.

ACTIVE VOICE.

222. *Cápio, I take.* — STEM, *căp*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
căpiō,	căpērē,	cēpi,	captūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
căpiō, căpis, căpit;	căpimūs, căpītis, căpiunt.
IMPERFECT.	
căpiēbām, -iēbās, -iēbāt;	căpiēbāmūs, -iēbātis, -iēbant.
FUTURE.	
căpiām, -iēs, -iēt;	căpiēmūs, -iētis, -ient.
PERFECT.	
cēpi, -istī, -īt;	cēpimūs, -istis, -erunt, or ērē.
PLUPERFECT.	
cēpērām, -ērās, -ērāt;	cēpērāmūs, -ērātis, -erant.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
cēpērō, -eris, -erit;	cēpērīmūs, -eritis, -erint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

căpiām, -iās, -iāt;	căpiāmūs, -iātis, -iant.
---------------------	--------------------------

IMPERFECT.

căpērēm, -ērēs, -ērēt;	căpērēmūs, -erētis, -erent.
------------------------	-----------------------------

PERFECT.

cēpērīm, -eris, -erit;	cēpērīmūs, -eritis, -erint.
------------------------	-----------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

cēpissēm, -issēs, -issēt;	cēpissēmūs, -issētis, -issent.
---------------------------	--------------------------------

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES. cāpē;	cāpītē.
FUT. cāpītō, cāpītō;	cāpītōte, cāpiuntō.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. cāpērē.
PERF. cēpissē.
FUT. captūrūs essē.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. cāpiens.
FUT. captūrūs.

GERUND.

Gen. cāpiendī.
Dat. cāpiendō.
Acc. cāpiendūm.
Abl. cāpiendō.

SUPINE.

Acc. captūm.
Abl. captū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

223. Capior, *I am taken.* — STEM, *cāp*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind. cāpiōr,	Pres. Inf. cāpī,	Perf. Ind. captūs sūm.
-----------------------	---------------------	---------------------------

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
cāpiōr, cāpēris, cāpītūr;	cāpīmūr, cāpīmīnī, cāpiuntūr.
IMPERFECT.	
cāpiebār, -iēbāris, -iēbātūr;	cāpiebāmūr, -iēbāmīnī, -iēbantūr.
FUTURE.	
cāpiār, -iēris, -iētūr;	cāpiēmūr, -iēmīnī, -ientur.
PERFECT.	
captūs sūm, ēs, est;	captī sūmūs, estīs, sunt.
PLUPERFECT.	
captūs ērām, ērās, ērāt;	captī ērāmūs, ērātīs, ērant.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
captūs ērō, ēris, ērit;	captī ērīmūs, ēritīs, ērunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
cāpiār, -iārīs, -iātūr;	cāpiāmūr, -iāmīnī, -iantūr.
IMPERFECT.	
cāpērēr, -ērērīs, -ērētūr;	cāpērēmūr, -ērēmīnī, -ērentūr.
PERFECT.	
captūs sīm, sīs, sīt;	capti simūs, sītīs, sint.
PLUPERFECT.	
captūs essēm, essēs, essēt;	capti essēmūs, essētīs, essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cāpērē;	cāpimīnī.
FUT. cāpītōr, cāpītōr;	cāpiuntōr.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. cāpī.
PERF. captūs essē.
FUT. captūm irī.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. captūs.
GER. cāpiendūs. ¹

EXERCISE XLIX.

I. Vocabulary.

A, āb, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>from. by.</i>
Accipiō, accipērē, accēpi, acceptūm,	<i>to receive.</i>
Bellūm, i, n.	<i>war.</i>
Cāpiō, cāpērē, cēpi, captūm,	<i>to take, capture.</i>
Carthāgō, Carthāginīs, f.	<i>Carthage, city in Africa.</i>
Cornēliūs, ii, m.	<i>Cornelius, a proper name.</i>
Gallūs, i, m.	<i>Gaul, a Gaul.²</i>

¹ The pupil will observe that the conjugation of *Capio* is somewhat peculiar, combining certain characteristics of the *Fourth Conjugation* with others of the *Third*. He should now carefully compare it with the conjugation of *Rego* and with that of *Audio*, and note with accuracy both the differences and the resemblances.

² The Gauls were a people inhabiting the country of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.

Jāciō, jācērē, jēci, jactūm,	to cast, throw, hurl.
Lāpis, lapidis, m.	stone.
Lux, lūcis, f.	light.
Mūrūs, i, m.	wall.
Publiūs, ii, m.	Publius, a proper name.
Rēgulūs, i, m.	Regulus, Roman general.
Tēlūm, i, n.	javelin.
Trōjā, ae, f.	Troy, city in Asia Minor.

II. Translate into English.

1. Graeci Trojam capiēbant. 2. Trojam cepērunt. 3. Troja capta¹ est. 4. Troja capta erat. 5. Regulus ipse captus est. 6. Belli duces capientur. 7. Haec urbs capiētur. 8. Illam urbem capiēmus. 9. Roma a Gallis² capta erat. 10. Galli Romam cepērant. 11. Scipio multas civitates cepit. 12. Luna lucem a sole accēpit. 13. Lucem a sole accipimus. 14. Tuam³ epistolam accēpi. 15. Milites tela jaciēbant.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. We were taking the city. 2. The city will be taken. 3. The city has been taken. 4. The cities will be taken. 5. The cities have been taken. 6. Who⁴ took Carthage? 7. Publius Cornelius Scipio took Carthage. 8. Have you not⁵ received my letter? 9. I have received your letter. 10. Have you not received five letters? 11. We have received ten letters.

¹ For the agreement of the participle in the compound tenses with the subject, see Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

² See Rule XXXII., page 26.

³ What is the usual place of the Possessive Pronoun? See page 77, note 1. In this sentence, *tuam* precedes its noun because it is emphatic.

⁴ Which form of the Interrogative Pronoun should be used, *quīs* or *quī*? See 188.

⁵ Which Interrogative Particle should be used? See 346, II. 1, page 59.

PART THIRD.

S Y N T A X.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

SECTION I.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*:

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts, so related that one is dependent upon the other:

Dōnec ēris felix, multos nūmērābis āmicos; *So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends.* Ovid.

1. CLAUSES. — In this example, two simple sentences, (1) “*You will be prosperous*,” and (2) “*You will number many friends*,” are so united that the first only specifies the time of the second: *You will number many friends*, (when?) *so long as you are prosperous*. The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts:

Sol ruit, et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends, and the mountains are shaded.* Virg.

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory*.

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion :

Miltiades accūsātus est, Miltiades was accused. Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

Quis non paupertātem extimescit, Who does not fear poverty? Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne, nonne, num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information : *Scribitne*, Is he writing? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes* : *Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no* : *Num scribit*, Is he writing?

III. An IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty :

Iustitiam cōle, Cultivate justice. Cic.

IV. An EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation :

Rēliquit quos viros, What heroes he has left! Cic.

SECTION II.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject :

Cluilius mōritur, Cluilius dies. Liv.

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *mōritur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers :

In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rex, mōritur; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in his castris moritur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

349. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE. — The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

350. SIMPLE AND COMPLEX. — The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex:

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.¹

SIMPLE SUBJECT.

351. The subject of a sentence must be a noun, or some word or words used as a noun:

*Rex*² dēcrēvit, *The king decreed.* Nep. *Ego*³ ad te scribo, *I write to you.* Cic.

SIMPLE PREDICATE.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

Miltiādes est accūsātus,³ *Miltiades was accused.* Nep. *Tu es testis*, *You are a witness.* Cic. *Fortūna caeca est*, *Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum*, several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*.⁴

¹ Thus, in the example given above, the simple subject is *Cluilius*; the complex, *Cluilius, Albānus rex*; the simple predicate, *moritur*; the complex, *in his castris moritur*.

² In these examples, the noun *rex* and the pronoun *ego*, used as a noun, are the subjects.

³ In the first of these examples, the predicate is the verb, *est accūsātus*; in the second, the noun and copula, *est testis*; and in the third, the adjective and copula, *caeca est*.

⁴ Thus *testis*, in the second example, is a *Predicate Noun*, and *caeca*, in the third, is a *Predicate Adjective*.

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.¹

362. A Predicate Noun² denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,² *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est declaratus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

EXERCISE L.

I. Vocabulary.

Amnis, amnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>river.</i>
Creo, are, avi, atum,	<i>to create, make, elect.</i>
Graecia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Greece.</i>
Imperator, imperatoris, <i>m.</i>	<i>commander.</i>
Latinus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Latinus, Italian king.</i>
Lavinia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Lavinia, a proper name.</i>
Malum, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>evil.</i>
Nominio, are, avi, atum,	<i>to call, name.</i>
Numa, ae, <i>m.</i>	<i>Numa, Roman king.</i>
Rhenus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>the Rhine, river in Europe.</i>
Servius, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Servius, Roman king.</i>
Stultitia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>folly.</i>
Tum, <i>adv.</i>	<i>then, at that time.</i>

¹ In illustrating in the subsequent pages the leading principles of the Latin Syntax, we shall take up the most common Rules in the order in which they stand in the Grammar. In doing so, we shall repeat in their proper places those Rules which we have had occasion to anticipate in the previous Exercises.

² See 353, 1; also Rule I. note, p. 59.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicĕro *consul*¹ fuit.² 2. Cicĕro *orĕtor* fuit. 3. Cicĕro tum³ erat² *orĕtor* clarissĭmus.⁴ 4. Puer *orĕtor* erit. 5. Numa erat rex. 6. Numa rex¹ creĕtus est. 7. Cato imperĕtor fuit. 8. Cato magnus imperĕtor fuit. 9. Scipio consul creĕtus est. 10. Scipio consul fuĕrat. 11. Stultitia est malum. 12. Gloria est fructus virtutis. 13. Graecia artium⁵ mater nominĕtur.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Rhine is a large *river*. 2. Rome was a beautiful *city*. 3. Cato was a wise *man*. 4. Your father is a wise man. 5. Lavinia was the daughter of the king. 6. Latinus was king. 7. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus. 8. Tullia was the daughter of Servius.

APPOSITIVES.

RULE II. — Appositives.

363. An Appositive⁶ agrees with its Subject in CASE:

Cluilius rex⁶ mŏritur, *Cluilius the king dies*. Liv. Urbes Carthĕgo⁶ atque Nŭmantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia*. Cic.

¹ Predicate Noun. See Rule I. For Model for parsing Predicate Nouns, see p. 59.

² For the *place* of the verb with Predicate Nouns, see note on *fuit* under Exercise XIX.

³ Adverb qualifying *erat*. See Rule LI. p. 72.

⁴ See 162; also Rule XXXIII. p. 34.

⁵ *Artium* depends upon *mater*. See Rule XVI. p. 21.

⁶ See 363, note, p. 15; also Model, p. 16. *Rex*, *Carthĕgo*, and *Nŭmantia* are all Appositives.

EXERCISE LI.

I. Vocabulary.

Alexandër, Alexandrī, <i>m.</i>	Alexander, the Great.
Conjux, conjūgis, <i>m. and f.</i>	wife, husband.
Epirūs, <i>i. f.</i>	Epirus, country in Greece.
Erūditūs, ū, ūm,	learned, instructed in.
Hannō, Hannōnis, <i>m.</i>	Hanno, Carthaginian general.
Justūs, ū, ūm,	just, upright.
Mācēdōniā, <i>ae, f.</i>	Macedonia, Macedon.
Nēpōs, nēpōtis, <i>m.</i>	grandson.
Paulūs, <i>i, m.</i>	Paulus, Roman consul.
Philippūs, <i>i, m.</i>	Philip, king of Macedon.
Pyrrhūs, <i>i, m.</i>	Phyrrhus, king of Epirus.
Vulnērō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	to wound.

II. Translate into English.

1. Cicēro, eruditissīmus homo,¹ consul² fuit. 2. Numa, justissīmus vir, erat rex. 3. Ancus, Numae nepos,¹ rex fuit. 4. Hanno dux captus est.³ 5. Pyrrhus, Epīri rex, vulnerātus est. 6. Philippus, rex Macedoniae, Athenienses superāvit. 7. Paulus consul¹ regem superāvit. 8. Philosophia, mater bonārum artium, nos erūdit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Tullia, the daughter¹ of Servius, was the wife² of Tarquin. 2. Servius, the father of Tullia, was a king. 3. Scipio, the leader of the Romans, took Carthage. 4. Scipio the general was praised. 5. Philip, king of Macedonia, was the father of Alexander. 6. Alexander, the son of Philip, was king of Macedonia.

¹ Appositive. See Rule II. For Model for parsing Appositives, see p. 16.

² Predicate Noun. See Rule I.

³ See 222.

SECTION II.

NOMINATIVE.

364. CASES. — Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows :

I. Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II. Vocative,	Case of Address.
III. Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV. Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V. Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI. Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations. ¹

RULE III. — Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative :

Servius regnāvit, Servius reigned. Liv. Patent portae, The gates are open. Cic. Rex vicit, The king conquered. Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively :

Ego rēges ejēci, I have banished kings. Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. — See 460, 2, p. 54.

EXERCISE LII.

I. Vocabulary.

Libertās, libertātis, <i>f.</i>	liberty.
Opulentūs, ā, ūm,	rich, opulent.
Quōtidiē, <i>adv.</i>	daily.
Vitiūm, ii, <i>n.</i>	fault, vice.
Oppidum, i, <i>n.</i>	town, city.

¹ This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because it is thought it will best present the force of the several cases, and their relation to each other.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Italia*¹ liberāta² est. 2. *Urbs* Roma liberāta erat. 3. Haec *urbs* clarissīma liberābitur. 4. Haec *urbs* opulentissīma est capta. 5. Virtus quotidie laudātur. 6. Virtūtes semper laudabuntur. 7. Sapientia semper est laudāta. 8. Libertas semper laudābitur. 9. Omnia hostium oppida expugnāta sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not *Philip* wounded? 2. *Philip*, king of Macedonia, was wounded. 3. Many *soldiers* were wounded. 4. Did not the soldiers fight bravely? 5. The soldiers fought bravely. 6. Will not the laws be observed? 7. The laws have been observed. 8. They will be observed.

SECTION III.

VOCATIVE.

RULE IV. — Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative :

Perge, Laeli,³ Proceed, Laelius. Cic. Quid est, Cātīlina,³ Why is it, Catiline? Cic. Tuum est, Servi,³ regnum. The kingdom is yours, Servius. Liv.

EXERCISE LIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Auditōr, auditōris, m.	hearer, auditor.
Cārūs, ā, ūm,	dear.
Jūvēnis, is, m. and f.	a youth, young man.
Lēgātūs, i, m.	ambassador.
Sālūtō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to salute.

¹ Subject of *liberāta est*. See Rule III. For Model for parsing Subjects, see p. 57.

² Why *liberāta* rather than *liberātus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

³ *Laeli*, *Catīlina*, and *Servi* are all in the Vocative by this Rule. *Laeli* is for *Laelie*, and *Servi*, for *Servie*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Te, *Scipio*,¹ salutāmus. 2. Vos, *amīci*¹ carissīmi,² salūto. 3. Vos, *auditōres* omnes, salutāmus. 4. Verba mea, *judices*, audite. 5. Haec verba, legāti, audite. 6. Vos, milites, hanc urbem clarissimam custodite. 7. Milites¹ fortissīmi, patriam vestram liberāte. 8. Vestram virtutem, juvēnes, laudāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. *Boys*,¹ hear the words of your father. 2. *Judges*, you shall hear the truth. 3. *Father*, have we not spoken the truth? 4. You, boys, have spoken the truth. 5. Soldiers, you have fought bravely. 6. You, brave soldiers, have saved your country. 7. Pupils, I praise your diligence.

SECTION IV.

ACCUSATIVE.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object³ of an action is put in the Accusative :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world*.⁴ Cic. Libēra rem publicam, *Free the republic*. Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni sālūtem dēfendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people*. Cic.

¹ In the Vocative, according to Rule IV. No special Model for parsing is deemed necessary, as all nouns are parsed substantially in the same way; though different Rules are, of course, assigned for different cases. See Directions for Parsing, p. 15; also Model, p. 16.

The Vocative is not often the first word in the sentence, though it is sometimes thus placed, as in the seventh sentence in this Exercise.

² See 162.

³ See note on Direct Object, p. 70.

⁴ See note on the position of the Object in the Latin sentence, p. 70.

EXERCISE LIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Flāminiūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Flaminius</i> , Roman general.
Marcellūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Marcellus</i> , Roman general.
Poenūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Carthaginian</i> .
Poenus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>a Carthaginian</i> .
Sanctūs, ā, ūm,	<i>holy, sacred</i> .
Siciliā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Sicily</i> , the island of.
Spōliū, ārcē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to rob, spoil, despoil</i> .
Sýracūsae, ārūm, <i>f. plur.</i>	<i>Syracuse</i> , city in Sicily.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Alexander multas *urbes*¹ expugnāvit. 2. Italia pulchras *urbes* habuit. 3. Hostes *templū* spoliābant. 4. *Templa* sanctissima spoliavērunt. 5. Hannībal Flaminium¹ consulem² superāvit. 6. Poeni Siciliam occupavērunt. 7. Marcellus³ magnam hujus insulae⁴ partem cepit. 8. Marcellus Syracūsas,¹ nobilissimam urbem,² expugnāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not⁵ love your *parents*?¹ 2. We love our *parents*. 3. You practise *virtue*. 4. Our pupils will practise *virtue*. 5. Did not Rome have beautiful temples? 6. Rome had beautiful temples. 7. Have not the enemy⁶ taken the city? 8. They have taken the beautiful city. 9. They will plunder all the temples.

¹ Direct Object, in the Accusative, according to Rule V. For Model for parsing, see p. 71.

² Appositive. See Rule II. 363.

³ Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

⁴ *Hujus insulae*, of this island; i.e., of Sicily. Observe the position of the Genitive between the adjective *magnam* and its noun *partem*. See note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX. II. 10.

⁵ See 346, II. 1.

⁶ The Latin word must be in the plural.

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

RULE VIII. — Accusative of Time and Space.

378. DURATION OF TIME, and EXTENT OF SPACE, are expressed by the Accusative: *distance*.

Rōmulus septem et triginta regnāvit annos,¹ *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambūlare, *To walk five miles.* Cic. Pēdes octōginta distāre, *To be eighty feet distant.* Caes. Nix quattuor pēdes¹ alta, *Snow four feet deep.* Liv.

EXERCISE LV.

I. Vocabulary.

Aggēr, aggēris, <i>m.</i>	<i>mound, rampart.</i>
Ambūlō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to walk.</i>
Centūm,	<i>hundred.</i>
Glādiūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>sword.</i>
Lācedaemōniūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>a Lacedaemonian, Spartan.</i>
Lātūs, ū, ūm,	<i>broad, wide.</i>
Longūs, ū, ūm,	<i>long.</i>
Mēsis, mēsis, <i>m.</i>	<i>month.</i>
Nox, noctis, <i>f.</i>	<i>night.</i>
Octōgintā,	<i>eighty.</i>
Pēs, pēdis, <i>m.</i>	<i>foot.</i>
Quinquāgintā,	<i>fifty.</i>
Regnō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to reign.</i>
Vigilō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to watch, be awake.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedaemonii pacem sex annos² servavērunt. 2. Magnam noctis partem² vigilavēram. 3. Puer octo horas

¹ Annos denotes *Duration of Time*, while millia and pedes denote *Extent of Space*. They are all in the Accusative by this Rule.

² In the Accusative denoting *Duration of Time*. See Rule VIII. No special Model for parsing is necessary. The pupil will be guided by previous directions and Models.

dormivit. 4. Latinus multos annos regnāvit. 5. In Italiā sex menses fuīmus. 6. In illā urbe decem dies fuīmus. 7. Agger octoginta pedes¹ latus fuit. 8. Hic gladius sex pedes longus est.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Did you not walk two hours? 2. We walked three hours. 3. Did you not sleep six hours? 4. We slept eight hours. 5. The soldiers guarded the city ten months. 6. Were you not in the city four months? 7. We were in the city five months. 8. The mound was fifty feet high.

ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative: *on small islands.*

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv. Plāto Tārentum² vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fūgit Tarquinios,² *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic.

EXERCISE LVI.

I. Vocabulary.

Athēnae, ārūm, <i>f. plur.</i>	Athens, capital of Attica.
Fūgiō, fūgērē. fūgi, fūgītūm,	to flee, fly, run away.
Lýsandēr, Lýsandri, <i>m.</i>	Lysander, Spartan general.
Miltiādēs, is, <i>m.</i>	Miltiades, Athenian general.
Nāvigō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	to sail, sail to.

¹ In the Accusative, denoting *Extent of Space*.

² Romam, Tarentum, and Tarquinios are all names of towns used as the *Limit of Motion*; i.e., the motion is represented as ending in those towns. They are in the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

Rēducō, rēducēre, rēdūxī, rēductūm,	to lead back.
Rēvocō, arē, avi, atūm,	to recall.
Spartā, ae, f.	Sparta, capital of Laconia.
Tarentūm, i, n.	Tarentum, Italian town.
Thēbānūs, ā, ūm,	Theban.
Thēbānūs, i, m.	a Theban.

II. Translate into English.

1. Cicero *Romam*¹ revocatus est. 2. Consules *Romam* revocati sunt. 3. Hannibal *Carthaginem*¹ revocatus erat. 4. Lysander *Athēnas*¹ navigavit. 5. Pyrrhus Tarentum fugatus est. 6. Consul regem Tarentum fugavit. 7. Thebani exercitum Spartam ducunt. 8. Miltiades exercitum Athēnas reduxit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who fled to Carthage?² 2. Did not the enemy flee to Carthage? 3. They fled to Carthage. 4. Will not the army be led back to Rome?² 5. The army has been led back to Rome. 6. The commander led the army to Athens.

SECTION V.

DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used,

- I. With Verbs.
- II. With Adjectives.
- III. With their Derivatives, — Adverbs and Substantives.

DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. INDIRECT OBJECT. — A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the

¹ In the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

² The Latin word will be in the Accusative, in accordance with Rule IX.

action, — that TO or FOR which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative :

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs :

Tempōri¹ cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sibi tīmuērant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lābōri stūdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Nōbis¹ vita dāta est, *Life has been granted to us.* Cic. Nūmītōri dēditur, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Pons īter hostībūs² dēdit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēges cīvitatībūs suis scripsērunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

EXERCISE LVII.

I. Vocabulary.

Carthāgīniēsis, ē,	Carthaginian.
Carthāgīniēsis, is, m. and f.	a Carthaginian.
Cōnōn, Cōnōnis, m.	Conon, Athenian gen'l.
Dēbeō, dēbērē, dēbui, dēbitūm,	to owe.
Displīceō, displīcērē, displīcui, displīcitūm,	to displease.
Dōnō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	to give.
Gens, gentis, f.	race.
Grātiā, ae, f.	favor, gratitude, thanks.
Lābōrō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	to strive for.

¹ Tempōri, sibi, and labōri are in the Dative with the Intransitive verbs *cedit*, *tīmuērant* (intransitive here), and *student*; while *nobis* and *Numītōri* are in the Dative with the Passive verbs *data est* and *deditur*.

² Hostībūs is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *iter*, with the Transitive verb *dedit*. In the same way, *civitātībūs* is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *leges*, with the Transitive verb *scripsērunt*.

Monstrō, arē, āvī, ātūm,	to show, point out.
Plāceō, plācērē, plācuī, plāctūm,	to please.
Sēnectūs, sēnectūtis, f.	old age.
Sententiā, ae, f.	opinion.
Serviō, servirē, servivī, servitūm,	to serve.
Viā, ae, f.	way, road.

II. Translate into English.

1. Cives legibus¹ parent. 2. Multae Italiae civitates Romānis parēbant. 3. Haec sententia Caesāri¹ placuit. 4. Illa sententia Caesāri displicuit. 5. Milites gloriae labōrant. 6. Hoc consilium Caesāri nuntiātum est. 7. Nostra consilia hostibus nuntiāta sunt. 8. Tibi² magnam gratiam habēmus. 9. Habeo senectūti magnam gratiam. 10. Conon pecuniam civibus donāvit. 11. Pastor puēro viam monstrāvit. 12. Tibi viam monstrābo. 13. Romāni Carthaginiensibus bellum indixērunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Did I not obey my³ father?¹ 2. You obeyed your father. 3. We will obey the laws of the state. 4. Do not the citizens serve the king? 5. They have served the king. 6. Will you not serve the state? 7. We will serve the state. 8. Will you not tell me (to me⁴) the truth?⁵ 9. I have told you (to you) the truth. 10. Will you show

¹ Indirect Object, in the Dative, according to Rule XII. I.

² Indirect Object, in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *gratiam* with the Transitive verb *habēmus*, according to Rule XII. II.

In the arrangement of Objects, the *Indirect* generally precedes the *Direct*, as in this sentence; though the order is sometimes reversed, as in the tenth sentence in this Exercise.

³ In examples like this, the Possessive pronoun may either be expressed or omitted, as it is often omitted in Latin when not emphatic.

⁴ Dative. See Rule XII. II.

⁵ Accusative. See Rule XII. II.

me (to me) the way? 11. We will show you the way.
 12. Did they declare war against the Romans? 13.
 They had declared war against the Romans.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XIV. — Dative.

391. With Adjectives, the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative :

Patriae solum omnibus¹ carum est, The soil of their country is dear to all. Cic. *Id aptum est tempori, This is adapted to the time.* Cic. *Omni aetati mors est communis, Death is common to every age.* Cic. *Canis similis lupo est, A dog is similar to a wolf.* Cic. *Naturae accommodatum, Adapted to nature.* Cic. *Graeciae utile, Useful to Greece.* Nep.

1. ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE. — The most common are those signifying :

Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in *bilis*.

EXERCISE LVIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Amicus, a, ūm,	friendly.
Hispania, ae, f.	Spain.
Multitudo, multitudinis, f.	multitude.
Saguntum, i, n.	Saguntum, city in Spain.
Similis, e,	like.
Solum, i, n.	soil.
Veritas, veritatis, f.	verity, truth.

¹ Dative, showing to whom the soil is dear, — dear TO ALL. In the same way in these examples, *tempori* is used with *aptum*, *aetati* with *communis*, *lupo* with *similis*, *naturae* with *accommodatum*, and *Graeciae* with *utile*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Parentes *nobis*¹ cari sunt. 2. Patria *nobis* cara est.
 3. Patria *tibi*¹ erit carissima. 4. Patriae solum *nobis* carum
 est. 5. Hannibal exercitui carus fuit. 6. Victoria Romā-
 nis grata fuit. 7. Libertas multitudini grata est. 8. Veri-
 tas nobis gratissima est. 9. Jucunda mihi oratio fuit. 10.
 Saguntum Romānis amicum fuit. 11. Hannibal Sagun-
 tum,² Hispaniae civitatem³ Romānis⁴ amicam,⁵ expugnāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not these books be useful *to you*? 2. They are
 useful *to us*. 3. They will be useful *to you*. 4. This law
 has been useful to the state. 5. Will not this book be ac-
 ceptable to you? 6. That book will be acceptable to me.
 7. This book will be most acceptable⁶ to my brother.

SECTION VI.

GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes *source* or *cause*; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *of*, and expresses various ad-
 jective relations.

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the
 meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

¹ Dative, according to Rule XIV.

² Accusative. See Rule V.

³ Appositive, in agreement with Saguntum. See Rule II.

⁴ Dative with *amicam*. See Rule XIV.

⁵ *Amicam* agrees with *civitatem*. See Rule XXXIII. p. 34.

⁶ See 162.

Cātōnis¹ ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations*. Cic. Castra hostium, *The camp of the enemy*. Liv. Mors Hāmilcāris, *The death of Hamilcar*. Liv. See 363.

EXERCISE LIX.

I. Vocabulary.

Commūnis, ē,	common.
Conscientiā, ae, f.	consciousness.
Dulcis, ē,	sweet, pleasant.
Hōnōr, hōnōris, m.	honor.
Orbis, orbis, m.	circle, world.
Orbis terrārū, ²	the world.
Parvūs, ū, ūm,	small.
Principiū, ii, n.	beginning.
Rectū, i, n.	rectitude, right.
Sōcratēs, is, m.	Socrates, Athenian philosopher.

II. Translate into English.

1. *Justitia virtutum*³ regina est. 2. *Sapientia* est mater omnium bonarum artium. 3. *Socrates* parens philosophiae fuit. 4. *Virtus veri honoris*⁴ mater est. 5. *Patria communis*⁵ est omnium nostrum⁶ parens. 6. *Roma orbis*⁷ terrarum caput fuit. 7. Omnium rerum principia parva sunt. 8. *Conscientia recti* est praemium virtutis dulcissimum.

¹ *Cātōnis* qualifies *oratiōnes*, and is in the Genitive, in accordance with the Rule.

² Literally *the circle of lands*.

³ Genitive, depending upon *regina*. Rule XVI.

⁴ Genitive, depending upon *mater*.

⁵ *Commūnis* agrees with *parens*. See Rule XXXIII.

⁶ Genitive, depending upon *parens*.

⁷ *Orbis* depends upon *caput*, and *terrārū* upon *orbis*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The orations of Cicero are praised.
2. The courage of the soldiers saved the city.
3. The crown of the king was golden.
4. The sword of the general was beautiful.
5. The son of the consul violated the laws of the state.
6. The citizens will observe the laws of the state.

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XVII.—Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning :

Avidus laudis,¹ *Desirous of praise*. Cic. *Otii cūptus*, *Desirous of leisure*. Liv. *Amans sui virtus*, *Virtue fond of itself*. Cic. *Efficiens voluptātis*, *Productive of pleasure*. Cic. *Glōriæ mēmor*, *Mindful of glory*. Liv.

1. FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE.—The genitive here retains its usual force,—*of, in respect of*,—and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.—The most common are

1) Verbals in **ax**, and participles in **ans** and **ens** used adjectively.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, participation, mastery, fulness*, and their contraries.

EXERCISE LX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Amans, āmantis,

loving, fond of.

Avidūs, ā, ūm,

desirous of, eager for.

¹ *Laudis* completes the meaning of *avidus*; *desirous* (of what?) of *praise*. It is in the Genitive, by this Rule. In the same way, *otii* completes the meaning of *cūptus*; *sui*, of *amans*; *voluptātis*, of *efficiens*; and *glōriæ*, of *mēmor*.

Certāmen, certāminis, <i>n.</i>	contest, strife, battle.
Cupidūs, ā, ūm,	desirous of.
Fons, fontis, <i>m.</i>	fountain.
Laus, laudis, <i>f.</i>	praise.
Nōvītās, nōvītātis, <i>f.</i>	novelty.
Pēritūs, ā, ūm,	skilled in.
Piscis, piscis, <i>m.</i>	fish.
Plēnūs, ā, ūm,	full.
Vōluptās, vōluptātis, <i>f.</i>	pleasure.

II. Translate into English.

1. Romāni avidi gloriæ¹ fuerunt. 2. Homīnes novitātis avidi sunt. 3. Numa pacis¹ erat amantissimus.² 4. Patriæ amantissimi sumus. 5. Consul gloriæ cupidus erat. 6. Cicero gloriæ cupidissimus² fuit. 7. Milites erant avidissimi certaminis. 8. Fons piscium plenissimus est. 9. Athenienses belli navālis peritissimi fuerunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Boys are fond of praise. 2. Are you not fond of praise? 3. We are fond of praise. 4. Were not the Athenians fond of pleasure? 5. They were always fond of pleasure. 6. They are desirous of glory. 7. Are you not desirous of a victory? 8. We are desirous of a victory.

SECTION VII.

ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *from*, *by*, *in*, *with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used with Verbs and Adjectives; while the Genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

¹ Genitive, completing the meaning of the adjective. See Rule XVII

² See 162.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.

RULE XXI. — Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means¹ are denoted by the Ablative :

Ars utilitāte laudātur, *An art is praised because of its usefulness.*
 Cic. Glōriā dūcitur, *He is led by glory.* Cic. Duōbus mōdis fit, *It is done in two ways.* Cic. Sol omnia luce collustrat, *The sun illumines all things with its light.* Cic. Apri dentibus se tūtantur, *Boars defend themselves with their tusks.* Cic. Aeger erat vulneribus, *He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* Nep. Laetus sorte tua, *Pleased with your lot.* Hor.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE. — This Ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. — This designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which*, any thing is or is done.

3. ABLATIVE OF MANNER. — This Ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the preposition *cum* ; but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*, — *mōre, ordine, ratiōne*, etc., — occur without such accompaniment :

Vi summa, *With the greatest violence.* Nep. Mōre Persarum, *In the manner of the Persians.* Nep. Cum silentio audire, *To hear in silence.* Liv. Id ordine facere, *To do it in order, or properly.* Cic.

¹ It is not always possible to distinguish between *Cause, Manner, and Means*. Sometimes the same Ablative may involve both *Cause* and *Means*, or both *Means* and *Manner*. Still the pupil should be taught to determine in each instance, as far as possible, what is the real force of the Ablative. Thus in the examples, *utilitāte* denotes cause, because of its usefulness ; *gloriā*, means, with perhaps the accessory notion of cause ; *modis*, manner ; *luce*, means ; *dentibus*, means ; *vulneribus*, cause, with perhaps the accessory notion of means ; and *sorte*, cause and means.

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS. — This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed.

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT. — This designates the Person by whom any thing is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the preposition *a* or *ab*:

*Occisus est a Thēbānis, He was slain by the Thebans.*¹ *Nep.*

EXERCISE LXI.

I. Vocabulary.

Mūnūs, mūnērīs, <i>n.</i>	<i>reward, gift.</i>
Nātūrā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>nature.</i>
Pellīs, pellīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>skin, hide.</i>
Quōtīdīānūs, <i>ū, ūm,</i>	<i>daily.</i>
Scythae, <i>ārum, m. plur.</i>	<i>Scythians.</i>
Triumphō, <i>ārē, āvi, ātūm,</i>	<i>to triumph.</i>
Usūs, <i>ūs, m.</i>	<i>use.</i>
Vestiō, <i>irē, īvi, itūm,</i>	<i>to clothe.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Consul *virtūte*² laudātus est. 2. Urbs *natūrā*³ munita erat. 3. Haec urbs *arte* muniētur. 4. *Muneribus*³ delectāmur. 5. Roma Camilli virtūte est servāta. 6. Camillus hostes magno proelio superāvit. 7. Scipio patrem singulāri virtūte servāvit. 8. Scipio ingenti gloriā⁴ triumphāvit.⁵ 9. Scythae corpōra pellibus vestiēbant.

¹ By comparing this example with those under the Rule, the second for instance, it will be seen that the Latin construction distinguishes the person by whom any thing is done from the means by which it is done, designating the former by the Ablative with *a* or *ab* (*a Thēbānis*, by the Thebans), and the latter by the Ablative without a preposition; *gloriā*, by glory.

² Ablative of Cause, according to Rule XXI.

³ Ablative of Means.

⁴ Ablative of Manner.

⁵ The privilege of entering Rome in grand triumphal procession was sometimes awarded to eminent Roman generals as they returned from victory. *Triumphāvit* here refers to such a triumph.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are not the fields adorned *with flowers*?¹ 2. The fields are adorned *with beautiful flowers*. 3. Have you not strengthened your memory *by use*? 4. I have strengthened my memory by daily use. 5. You will be praised for (because of) your diligence.² 6. Our pupils have been praised for their diligence. 7. The general saved the city by his valor. 8. Rome was saved by the valor of the Roman soldiers.

ABLATIVES WITH COMPARATIVES.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est amabilius virtute,³ *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic.
Quid est melius bonitate,³ *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM⁴ are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hibernia minor quam Britannia existimatur, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi⁵ terribilior, *More terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

¹ Ablative of Means. Rule XXI.

² Ablative of Cause.

³ Virtute and bonitate are both in the Ablative, by this Rule; the former after the comparative amabilis, and the latter after the comparative melius.

⁴ Quam is a conjunction, meaning *than*. Conjunctions are mere connectives, used to connect words or clauses.

⁵ Agris and urbi, the one *before* and the other *after* quam, are both in the same construction, in the Dative, depending upon terribilior according to Rule XIV, 391.

EXERCISE LXII.

I. Vocabulary.

Argentūm, i. n.	silver.
Avāritiā ae. f.	avarice.
Bōnitās, bōnitātis, f.	goodness, excellence.
Elōquens, elōquentis,	eloquent.
Ferrūm, i. n.	iron.
Foedūs, ā, ūm,	detestable.
Prētiōsūs, ā, ūm,	valuable.
Quām, conj.	than.
Scientiā, ae, f.	knowledge.
Turrīs, turrīs, f.	tower.

II. Translate into English.

1. Virtus mihi ¹ *gloriā* ² est carior. 2. Patria mihi *vitā* ² meā est carior. 3. Quid est jucundius *amicitiā*? 4. Quid foedius est *avaritiā*? 5. Aurum argento pretiosius est. 6. Animus corpore est nobilior. 7. Turris altior erat quam murus.³ 8. Quid multitudīni ¹ gratius quam libertas est? 9. Pater tuus est sapientior quam tu.⁴ 10. Quis eloquentior fuit quam Demosthēnes? /

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Silver is more valuable than *iron*.² 2. Virtue is more valuable than *gold*. 3. Wisdom is more valuable than *money*. 4. Will not wisdom be more useful to you than gold? 5. Wisdom will be more useful to me than gold. 6. Goodness is more valuable than ⁵ knowledge. 7. Good-

¹ See Rule XIV. 391.

² Ablative, depending upon the comparative without *quam*, according to Rule XXIII.

³ In the same case as *turrīs*, the corresponding noun before *quam*. It is the subject of *erat* understood.

⁴ Subject of *es* understood.

In this and the following examples use *quam*, according to 417, 1.

ness is dearer to us than glory. 8. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 9. The soldiers were braver than the general.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

I. The PLACE IN WHICH any thing is or is done:

II. The PLACE FROM WHICH any thing proceeds, including *Source* and *Separation*.

RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Locative: (45, 2).

I. Hannibal in Itāliā¹ fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep. In nostris castris, *In our camps.* Caes. In Appiā viā, *On the Appian Way.* Cic. Ab urbe proficiscitur, *He departs from the city.* Caes. Ex Africā, *From Africa.* Liv.

II. Athēnis² fuit, *He was at Athens.* Cic. Bābŷlōne mortuus est. *He died at Babylon.* Cic. Fūgit Cōrintho, *He fled from Corinth.* Cic. Rōmae² fuit, *He was at Rome.* Cic.

EXERCISE LXIII.

I. Vocabulary.

A, āh, *prep. with abl.*

from, by.

Bābŷlōn, Bābŷlōnis, *f.*

Babylon, the city of.

¹ In Itāliā, in castris, and in viā designate the PLACE IN WHICH; while ab urbe and ex Africā designate the PLACE FROM WHICH. They are in the Ablative with a preposition.

² Athēnis, Bābŷlōne, and Cōrintho, being names of towns, omit the preposition; while Rōmae, also the name of a town, is in the Locative, as it is in the Singular of the First declension. See 48, 4.

Cōrinhūs, i, <i>f.</i>	<i>Corinth</i> , city in Greece.
Diōnysiūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Dionysius</i> , tyrant of Syracuse.
Hābitō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to dwell, reside.</i>
Hortūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>garden.</i>
Laetitiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>joy.</i>
Lūcūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>grove.</i>
Rēgiō, rēgiōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>region, territory.</i>
Sēnātor, sēnātoris, <i>m.</i>	<i>senator.</i>
Trigintā,	<i>thirty.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Hannibāl in *Hispaniā*¹ fuit. 2. Latinus in *Italiā* regnāvit. 3. Latinus in illis regionibus regnābat. 4. Cives ab urbe² fugiebant. 5. Themistōcles e Graeciā fugit. 6. Sex menses³ *Athēnis*⁴ fui. 7. Alexander *Babylōne* erat. 8. Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsīs fugit. 9. Themistōcles *Athēnis* fugit. 10. *Athēnis* habitābat. 11. Romūlus *Romae*⁵ regnāvit. 12. *Romae* ingens laetitia fuit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Is not your father in *Italy*? 2. My father is in *Greece*. 3. Were you not in *Greece*? 4. We resided in *Greece* three years. 5. Who is in the garden? 6. My brother is in the garden. 7. The pupils were walking in the fields. 8. The nightingales are singing in the groves. 9. Your father resided many years at *Athens*. 10. Did he not reside at *Carthage*? 11. He resided four years at *Carthage*. 12. Did you not receive my letter at *Rome*? 13. I received your letter at *Corinth*.

¹ Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, with the preposition *in*. See Rule XXXII.

² Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH, with the preposition *ab*.

³ See Rule VIII.

⁴ In the Ablative, without a preposition, because it is the name of a town.

⁵ In the Locative, because it is the name of a town, and is in the Singular of the First declension.

ABLATIVE OF TIME.

RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octogēsimo anno¹ est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year.* Cic. Vere convenēre, *They assembled in the spring.* Liv. Nātāli die suo, *On his birth-day.* Nep. Hieme et aestate, *In winter and summer.* Cic.

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.—Any word so used as to involve the time of an action or event may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugnā*, in the time of battle; *lūdis*, at the time of the games; *mēmōriā*, in memory, i.e., in the time of one's recollection.

EXERCISE LXIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Brūtus, i, m.	<i>Brutus, a Roman patriot.</i>
Dēflāgrō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to burn, be consumed.</i>
Diānā, ae, f.	<i>Diana, a goddess.</i>
Ephēsīus, ā, ūm,	<i>Ephesian, of Ephesus.</i>
Hiems, hiēmīs, f.	<i>winter.</i>
Nātālis, ē,	<i>belonging to one's birth, natal.</i>
Nātālis diēs,	<i>birth-day.</i>
Pompēiūs, ii, m.	<i>Pompey, Roman general.</i>
Persae, ārūm, m. plur.	<i>Persians.</i>
Scribō, scribēre, scripsī, scriptūm,	<i>to write.</i>
Tempūs, tempōris, n.	<i>time.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Nātāli die² tuo scripsisti epistolām. 2. Eōdem die epistolām tuam accēpi.³ 3. Pompēius urbem tertio mense

¹ Anno, vere, die, hieme, and aestate are all in the Ablative, by this Rule.

² Ablative of Time, according to Rule XXVIII.

³ From accipio.

cepit. 4. Eōdem *die* Persae superāti sunt. 5. Pompēius illo tempore miles fuit. 6. Illo anno Diānae Ephesiae templum deflagrāvit. 7. Occāsu solis hostes fugāti sunt. 8. Illo die Brutus patriam servāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were you not in Athens¹ *at that time*? 2. We were at Corinth² *at that time*. 3. Do you not reside in the city¹ *in winter*? 4. We reside in this beautiful city in the winter. 5. The city was taken at sunset. 6. Were you not in the city at that hour? 7. I was in the city at that time. 8. Were you not in Rome² on your birth-day? 9. I was in that city on my birth-day.

SECTION VIII.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad āmicum³ scripsi, *I have written to a friend*. Cic. In cūriam, *Into the senate-house*. Liv. In Italiā, *In Italy*. Nep. Pro castris, *Before the camp*.

433. The ACCUSATIVE is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, apud, circa, circum, circiter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pēnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prōpe, propter, sēcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *To the city*. Cic. Adversus deos, *Toward the gods*. Cic.

434. The ABLATIVE is used with

A or ab (abs),	absque,	cōram,	cum,	de,
e or ex,	prae,	pro,	sine,	tēnus:

¹ Ablative of Place. See Rule XXVI.

² Locative. See Rule XXVI. II.

³ The Accusative *amicum* is here used with the preposition *ad*; *curiam*. with *in*; the Ablative *Italiā*, with *in*. See 435, 1.

Ab urbe, *From the city.* Caes. Cōram conventu, *In the presence of the assembly.* Nep.

435. The ACCUSATIVE or ABLATIVE is used with

In, sub, subter, super:

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia.* Cic. Hannibal in Italiā fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep.

1. In and Sub take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither*, the Ablative in answer to *where*: In Asiam, (*whither?*) *into Asia*; In Italiā, (*where?*) *in Italy*.

EXERCISE LXV.

I. Vocabulary.

Adversūs, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>against.</i>
Dimicō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to fight.</i>
Pēr, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>of, through.</i>
Prospērē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>successfully.</i>
Prōvocō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to challenge.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedaemonii hostes ad *proelium* provocābant.
2. Scipio contra *Hannōnem*, ducem Carthaginiensium, prospere pugnat.
3. Caesar adversus Pompēium dimicāvit.
4. Veritas per se¹ mihi grata est.
5. Virtus per se laudabilis est.
6. Persae a *Graecis*² superāti sunt.
7. Cicero de *amicitiā* scripsit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Will not the army be led back to *the city*?
2. It has been led back to *the city*.
3. Will you not write to me?
4. I will write to you.
5. Friendship is valuable of itself.
6. Have you not received five letters from *me*?
7. I have received four letters from *you*.
8. I have received two letters from your brother.

¹ *Per se*, literally *through itself*: render in *itself* or *of itself*.

² *A Graecis*, by the Greeks. See 414, 5.

SUGGESTIONS TO THE LEARNER.

I. THE preparation of a Reading Lesson in Latin involves,

1. A knowledge of the Meaning of the Latin.
2. A knowledge of the Structure of the Latin Sentences.
3. A translation into English.

MEANING OF THE LATIN.

II. Remember that almost every inflected word in a Latin sentence requires the use of both the Dictionary and the Grammar to ascertain its meaning.

The Dictionary gives the meaning of the word, without reference to its Grammatical properties of *case, number, mood, tense*, etc.; and the Grammar, the meaning of the endings which mark these properties. The Dictionary will give the meaning of *mensa*, a table, but not of *mensārum*, of tables: the Grammar alone will give the force of the ending *arum*.

III. Make yourself so familiar with all the endings of inflection, with their exact form and force, whether in declension or conjugation, that you will not only readily distinguish the different parts of speech from each other, but also the different forms of the same word, with their exact and distinctive force.

IV. In taking up a Latin sentence,

1. Notice carefully the endings of the several words, and thus determine which words are *nouns*, which *verbs*, etc.
2. Observe the force of each ending, and thus determine *case, number, voice, mood, tense*, etc.

This will be found to be a very important step toward the mastery of the sentence. By this means, you will discover not only the relation of the words to each other, but also an important part of their meaning.—that which they derive from their endings.

V. The key to the meaning of any simple sentence (345, I.) will be found in the simple subject and predicate; i.e., in the Nominative and its Verb. Hence, in looking out the sentence, observe the following order. Take

1. The Subject, or Nominative.

The ending will, in most instances, enable you to distinguish this from all other words, except the adjectives which agree with it. These may be looked out at the same time with the subject.

Sometimes the subject is not expressed, but only implied, in the ending of the verb. It may then be readily supplied, as it is always a pronoun of such person and number as the verb indicates: as, *audio*, I hear, the ending *o* showing that the subject is *ego*; *auditis*, you hear, the ending *itis* showing that the subject is *vos*.

2. The Verb, with Predicate Noun or Adjective, if any.

This will be readily known by the ending. Now, combining this with the Subject, you will have an outline of the sentence. All the other words must now be associated with these two parts.

3. The Modifiers of the Subject; i.e., adjectives agreeing with it, nominatives in apposition with it, genitives dependent upon it, etc.

But perhaps some of these have already been looked out in the attempt to ascertain the subject.

In looking out these words, bear in mind the meaning of the subject to which they belong. This will greatly aid you in selecting from the dictionary the true meaning in the passage before you.

4. The Modifiers of the Verb, i.e. (1) Oblique cases, accusatives, datives, etc., dependent upon it, and (2) Adverbs qualifying it.

Bear in mind all the while the force of the case and the meaning of the verb, that you may be able to select for each word the true meaning in the passage before you.

VI. In complex and compound sentences (345, II., III.), discover first the connectives which unite the several members, and then proceed with each member as with a simple sentence.

VII. In the use of Dictionary and Vocabulary, remember that you are not to look for the particular form which occurs in the sentence, but for the Nom. Sing. of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and for the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of verbs. Therefore,

1. In Pronouns, make yourself so familiar with their declension, that any oblique case will at once suggest the Nom. Sing.

If *vobis* occurs, you must remember that the Nom. Sing. is *tu*.

2. In Nouns and Adjectives, make yourself so familiar with the case-endings, that you will be able to drop that of the given case, and substitute for it that of the Nom. Sing.

Thus *mensibus*; stem *mensi*; Nom. Sing. *mensis*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *urbem*, *urb*, *urbs*.

3. In Verbs, change the ending of the given form into that of the First Pers. Sing. of the Pres. Indic. Act.

Thus *amābat*; stem *ama*, First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. *amo*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *amavērunt*; First Pers. Perf. *amāvi*, Perf. stem *amav*, Verb stem *ama*; *amo*.

To illustrate the steps recommended in the preceding suggestions, we add the following

Model.

VIII. Themistōcles imperātor servitūte totam Graeciam liberāvit.

1. Without knowing the meaning of the words, you will discover from their forms,

1) That *Themistōcles* and *imperātor* are probably nouns in the Nom. Sing.

2) That *servitūte* is a noun in the Abl. Sing.

3) That *totam* and *Graeciam* are either nouns or adjectives in the Accus. Sing.

4) That *liberāvit* is a verb in the Act. voice, Indic. mood, Perf. tense, Third Person, Singular number.

2. Now, turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, you will learn,

1) That *Themistōcles* is the name of an eminent Athenian general: **THEMISTOCLES**.

2) That *libēro*, for which you must look, not for *liberāvit*, means to liberate: **LIBERATED**.

Themistocles liberated.

3) That *imperātor* means *commander*: **THE COMMANDER**.

Themistocles the commander liberated.

4) That *Graeciam* is the name of a country: **GREECE**.

Themistocles the commander liberated Greece.

5) That *totus* means *the whole, all*: **ALL**.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece.

6) That *servītus* means *servitude*: **FROM SERVITUDE**.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece from servitude.

STRUCTURE OF THE LATIN SENTENCE.

IX. The structure of a sentence is best shown by *analyzing*¹ it, and by *parsing* the words which compose it.

Parsing.

XVII.² In parsing a word,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Inflect³ it, if capable of inflection.
3. Give its gender, number, case, voice, mood, tense, person, etc.⁴
4. Give its Syntax, and the Rule for it.⁵

TRANSLATION.

XIX. In translating, render as literally as possible without doing violence to the English.

¹ It has not been thought advisable to enter upon the subject of *analysis* at this early stage of the course. That will be presented in the Reader, which follows this work.

² These suggestions are taken, without change, from the Reader. Accordingly, the numerals are made to correspond to those in that work.

³ Inflect; i.e., decline, compare, or conjugate.

⁴ That is, such of these properties as it possesses.

⁵ For Models for Parsing, see pp. 16, 22, 27, 34, 55, 57, 59, 66, 71, and 73,

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

For Explanation of Abbreviations and References. see p. ix.

<p style="text-align: center;">A.</p> <p>A, ab, <i>prep. with abl. From, by.</i></p> <p>Accipio, accipere, accipi, acceptum. <i>To receive.</i></p> <p>Acēr, aceris, acerē. <i>Sharp, severe, valiant.</i></p> <p>Acies, aciei, <i>f.</i> <i>Order of battle, battle-array, army.</i></p> <p>Ad, <i>prep. with acc. To, towards, near.</i></p> <p>Administrō, arē, avi, atūm. <i>To administer, manage.</i></p> <p>Admoneō, admoneŕe, admōnuī, admōnitum. <i>To admonish.</i></p> <p>Adventus, ūs, <i>m.</i> <i>Arrival, approach.</i></p> <p>Adversus, <i>prep. with acc. Against.</i></p> <p>Aedificō, arē, avi, atūm. <i>To build.</i></p> <p>Aestas, aestatis, <i>f.</i> <i>Summer.</i></p> <p>Agēr, agri, <i>m.</i> <i>Field, land.</i></p> <p>Agger, aggeris, <i>m.</i> <i>Mound, rampart.</i></p> <p>Agis, Agidis, <i>m.</i> <i>Agis, a king of Sparta.</i></p> <p>Albanus, ū, um. <i>Alban.</i></p> <p>Alexander, Alexandri, <i>m.</i> <i>Alexander, the Great.</i></p> <p>Aliquis, aliquā, aliquid or aliquod. <i>Some, some one.</i></p> <p>Altus, ū, um. <i>High, lofty.</i></p> <p>Amans, amantis. <i>Loving, fond of.</i></p>	<p>Ambulō, arē, avi, atūm. <i>To walk.</i></p> <p>Amicitia, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Friendship.</i></p> <p>Amicus, ū, um. <i>Friendly.</i></p> <p>Amicus, i, <i>m.</i> <i>Friend.</i></p> <p>Amnis, amnis, <i>m.</i> <i>River.</i></p> <p>Amō, arē, avi, atūm. <i>To love.</i></p> <p>Amor, amoris, <i>m.</i> <i>Love.</i></p> <p>Ampliō, arē, avi, atūm. <i>To enlarge.</i></p> <p>Ancus, i, <i>m.</i> <i>Ancus, a Roman king.</i></p> <p>Animāl, animālis, <i>n.</i> <i>Animal.</i></p> <p>Animus, i, <i>m.</i> <i>Soul, mind, passion, disposition.</i></p> <p>Annulus, i, <i>m.</i> <i>Ring.</i></p> <p>Annus, i, <i>m.</i> <i>Year.</i></p> <p>Antē, <i>prep. with acc. Before.</i></p> <p>Antiquus, ū, um. <i>Ancient.</i></p> <p>Apis, apis, <i>f.</i> <i>Bee.</i></p> <p>Appellō, arē, avi, atūm. <i>To call.</i></p> <p>Appetens, appētentis. <i>Desiring, striving for.</i></p> <p>Apud, <i>prep. with acc. In the presence of, near, before, among.</i></p> <p>Apulia, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Apulia, a country in Italy.</i></p> <p>Arabs, Arabis, <i>m</i> and <i>f.</i> <i>Arab, an Arab.</i></p> <p>Arctē, <i>adv.</i> <i>Closely, soundly.</i></p> <p>Argentum, i, <i>n.</i> <i>Silver.</i></p> <p>Arō, arare, aravi, aratūm. <i>To plough.</i></p>
--	---

Arrŏgantiā, ae, *f.* *Arrogance.*
 Ars, artĭs, *f.* *Art, skill.*
 Artāxerxēs, is, *m.* *Artaxerxes, a Persian king.*
 Arx, arcis, *f.* *Citadel, fortress.*
 Athēnac, ārum, *f. plur.* *Athens, the capital of Attica.*
 Athēniensis, ē. *Athenian.*
 Athēniensis, is, *m. and f.* *Athenian, an Athenian.*
 Atticŭs, ī, *m.* *Atticus, a Roman name.*
 Audiō, irē, īvī, itūm. *To hear.*
 Auditōr, auditōris, *m.* *Hearer, auditor.*
 Aureŭs, ā, ūm. *Golden.*
 Aurūm, ī, *n.* *Gold.*
 Avāritiā, ae, *f.* *Avarice.*
 Avīdŭs, ā, ūm. *Desirous of, eager for.*
 Avis, avis, *f.* *Bird.*

B.

Bābŭlŏn, Bābŭlŏnis, *f.* *Babylon, the celebrated capital of the Assyrian Empire, on the banks of the Euphrates.*
 Beātŭs, ā, ūm. *Happy, blessed.*
 Bellūm, ī, *n.* *War, warfare.*
 Bēnē, *adv.* *Well.*
 Bēnignē, *adv.* *Kindly.*
 Bŏnitās, bŏnitātis, *f.* *Goodness, excellence.*
 Bŏnŭs, ā, ūm. *Good.*
 Brēvis, ē. *Short, brief.*
 Brŭtŭs, ī, *m.* *Brutus, a celebrated Roman patriot.*

C.

Caesār, Caesāris, *m.* *Cæsar, a celebrated Roman commander.*
 Cāiŭs, ii, *m.* *Caius, a proper name.*

Cāmillŭs, ī, *m.* *Camillus, a Roman general.*
 Campŭs, ī, *m.* *Plain.*
 Cānis, cānis, *m. and f.* *Dog.*
 Cantō, āre, āvī, ātūm. *To sing.*
 Cantŭs, ūs, *m.* *Singing, song.*
 Cāpiō, cāpēre, cēpi, captūm. *To take, capture.*
 Cāpŭt, cāptis, *n.* *Head, capital.*
 Carmēn, carminis, *n.* *Song, poem, verse.*
 Carthāgīniensis, ē. *Carthaginian.*
 Carthāgīniensis, is, *m. and f.* *A Carthaginian.*
 Carthāgŏ, Carthāgīnis, *f.* *Carthage, a city of Northern Africa.*
 Carthāgŏ Nŏvā. *New Carthage, Carthagena, a city of Spain.*
 Cārŭs, ā, ūm. *Dear.*
 Cātŏ, Cātŏnis, *m.* *Cato, a distinguished Roman.*
 Centūm. *One hundred. See 176.*
 Certāmen, certāminis, *n.* *Contest, strife, battle.*
 Cībŭs, ī, *m.* *Food.*
 Cīcērŏ, Cīcērŏnis, *m.* *Cicero, the celebrated Roman orator.*
 Cīvilis, ē. *Civil.*
 Cīvis, civis, *m. and f.* *Citizen.*
 Cīvitās, civitātis, *f.* *State, city.*
 Clārŭs, ā, ūm. *Renowned, distinguished, illustrious.*
 Classis, classis, *f.* *Fleet, navy.*
 Coerceō, coercēre, coercui, coercitūm. *To check.*
 Cŏlŏ, cŏlērē, cŏluī, cultūm. *To practise, cultivate.*
 Commŭnis, ē. *Common.*
 Condemnŏ, āre, āvī, ātūm. *To condemn.*
 Condītŏr, condītŏris, *m.* *Founder.*
 Conjux, conjūgis, *m. and f.* *Wife, husband, spouse.*

- Cōnōn, Cōnōnis, m. *Conon*, an Athenian general.
 Conscientiā, ac, f. *Consciousness*.
 Consiliū, ii, n. *Design, plan*.
 Conspectūs, ūs, m. *Sight, view, presence*.
 Consūl, consūlis, m. *Consul*.
 Contrā, prep. with acc. *Against, opposite to, contrary to*.
 Convocō, arē, avi, ātūm. *To assemble, call together*.
 Cōrīnthūs, i, f. *Corinth*, city in Greece.
 Cōrnēliūs, ii, m. *Cornelius*, a Roman name.
 Cōrōnā, ac, f. *Crown*.
 Corpūs, cor poris, n. *Body, person*.
 Creō, arē, avi, ātūm. *To create, make, appoint, elect*.
 Crūdēlis, ē. *Cruel*.
 Crūdūs, ā, ūm. *Unripe*.
 Culpō, arē, avi, ātūm. *To blame*.
 Cūm, prep. with abl. *With*.
 Cūpidūs, ā, ūm. *Desires of*.
 Cūrēs, Cūriūm, m. plur. *Cures*, a Sabine town.
 Custōdiō, irē, ivi, itūm. *To guard*.
 Custōs, custōdis, m. and f. *Keeper, guard*.
- D.
- Dē, prep. with abl. *Concerning*.
 Dēbēō, dēbērē, dēbui, dēbitūm. *To owe*.
 Dēcēm. *Ten*. See 176.
 Dēcimūs, ā, ūm. *Tenth*.
 Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis, f. *Eclipse*.
 Dēflāgrō, arē, avi, ātūm. *To burn, be consumed*.
 Dēlectō, arē, avi, ātūm. *To delight, please*.
 Dēmārātūs, i, m. *Demaratus*, a Corinthian.
- Dēmōsthēnēs, is, m. *Demosthenes*, the celebrated Athenian orator.
 Diānā, ae, f. *Diana*, the goddess of the chase.
 Dicō, dicērē, dixi, dictūm. *To say, speak, tell*.
 Diēs, diēi, m. *Day*. See 120, note.
 Diligens, diligentis. *Diligent*.
 Diligentia, ac, f. *Diligence*.
 Dimicō, arē, avi, ātūm. *To fight*.
 Diōnysius, ii, m. *Dionysius*, tyrant of Syracuse.
 Discipulūs, i, m. *Pupil*.
 Disertē, adv. *Clearly, eloquently*.
 Displicēō, displicērē, displicui, displicitūm. *To displease*.
 Divinūs, ā, ūm. *Divine*.
 Dōlōr, dōloris, m. *Pain, grief, suffering*.
 Dōnō, arē, avi, ātūm. *To give, present*.
 Dōnūm, i, n. *Gift*.
 Dormiō, irē, ivi, itūm. *To sleep*.
 Dracō, Dracōnis, m. *Draco*, an Athenian lawgiver.
 Dūcenti, ac, ā. *Two hundred*.
 Ducō, dūcērē, duxi, ductūm. *To lead*.
 Dulcis, ē. *Sweet, pleasant*.
 Duō, ac, ō. *Two*. See 175.
 Dūplicō, arē, avi, ātūm. *To double, increase*.
 Dux, dūcis, m. and f. *Leader, general*.
- E.
- E, ex, prep. with abl. *From*.
 Ebriētās, ebriētātis, f. *Drunkenness*.
 Educō, educērē, eduxi, eductūm. *To lead forth, lead out*.
 Effugiō, effugērē, effugi, effugitūm. *To escape*.
 Egō, mei. *I*. See 184.

Egrēgiūs, ā, ūm. *Distinguished.*

Egrēgiē, adv. *Excellently.*

Elēphantūs, ī, m. *Elephant.*

Elōquens, elōquentis. *Eloquent.*

Elōquentiā, ae, f. *Eloquence.*

Ephēsiūs, ā, ūm. *Ephesian, of Ephesus.*

Epīrūs, ī, f. *Epirus, a country in Greece.*

Epistolā, ae, f. *Letter.*

Erūdiō, irē, ivi, itum. *To instruct, refine, educate.*

Erūdītūs, ā, ūm. *Learned, instructed in.*

Ex, prep. with abl. *From.*

Exerceō, exercērē, exercui, exercitum. *To exercise, train.*

Exercitūs, ūs, m. *Army.*

Expugnō, arē, avi, atum. *To take, take by storm.*

Exspectō, arē, avi, atum. *To await, expect.*

Exsul, exsulis, m. and f. *Exile.*

F.

Fāciēs, faciēi, f. *Face, appearance.*

Ferrum, ī, n. *Iron.*

Fertilis, ē. *Fertile.*

Fidelitās, fidelitātis, f. *Fidelity, faithfulness.*

Fidēs, fidei, f. *Faith, fidelity.*

Fidūs, ā, ūm. *Faithful.*

Filiā, ae, f. *Daughter.*

Filius, ii, m. *Son.*

Finiō, irē, avi, itum. *To finish, bring to a close.*

Finis, finis, m. *Limit, territory.*

Firmō, arē, avi, atum. *To strengthen, confirm.*

Flāminiūs, ii, m. *Flaminius, a Roman general.*

Flōs, flōris, m. *Flower.*

Foedus, ā, ūm. *Detestable.*

Fons, fontis, m. *Fountain.*

Fortis, ē. *Brave.*

Fortitēr, adv. *Bravely.*

Fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f. *Bravery, fortitude.*

Fossā, ae, f. *Ditch, moat.*

Frāter, frātris, m. *Brother.*

Fruētis, ūs, m. *Fruit, produce, income.*

Frumentum, ī, n. *Corn, grain.*

Fūgā, ae, f. *Flight.*

Fūgiō, fūgērē, fūgi, fūgitum. *To flee, fly, run away.*

Fūgō, arē, avi, atum. *To rout, drive away.*

Fūnestūs, ā, ūm. *Destructive.*

Fūrōr, fūrōris, m. *Madness, insanity.*

G.

Gallūs, ī, m. *Gallus, a proper name.*

Gallūs, ī, m. *Gaul, a Gaul, an inhabitant of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.*

Gemmā, ae, f. *Gem.*

Gēnēr, gēnērī, m. *Son-in-law.*

Gens, gentis, f. *Race.*

Germaniā, ae, f. *Germany.*

Glādiūs, ii, m. *Sword.*

Glōbōsus, ā, ūm. *Spherical.*

Glōriā, ae, f. *Glory.*

Graeciā, ae, f. *Greece.*

Graecūs, ā, ūm. *Grecian, Greek.*

Graccūs, ī, m. *Greek, a Greek.*

Grātiā, ae, f. *Favor, gratitude, thanks.*

Grātūs, ā, ūm. *Acceptable, pleasing.*

Grex, grēgis, m. *Herd, flock.*

H.

Hābeō, hābērē, hābui, hābitum. *To have, hold.*

Hābitō, arē, avi, atum. *To dwell, reside.*

Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, *m.* *Hanni-*
bal, a celebrated Carthaginian
general.
Hannō, Hannōnīs, *m.* *Hanno*, a
Carthaginian general.
Hastā, *ac, f.* *Spear.*
Hic, hacc, hōc. *This.*
Hiems, hiēmīs, *f.* *Winter.*
Hirundō, hirundīnīs, *f.* *Swallow.*
Hispaniā, *ac, f.* *Spain.*
Hispanūs, *i, m.* *A Spaniard.*
Hōmērūs, *i, m.* *Homer*, the cele-
brated Grecian poet.
Hōmō, hōmīnīs, *m.* *Man.*
Hōnōr, hōnōrīs, *m.* *Honor.*
Hōrā, *ac, f.* *Hour.*
Hostīs, hostīs, *m. and f.* *Enemy.*

I.

Idēm, eādēm, idēm. *Same, the*
same. See 186.
Ignōrō, arē, avi, atūm. *To be*
ignorant of, not to know.
Illē, illā, illūd. *That, he, she, it.* See
186.
Illustrō, arē, avi, atūm. *To illus-*
trate, illumine.
Imāgō, imāgīnīs, *f.* *Image, picture.*
Impātiens, impatīentīs. *Impatient.*
Impērātōr, impērātōrīs, *m.* *Com-*
mander.
Impēriūm, *ii, n.* *Reign, power, gov-*
ernment.
Impētūs, ūs, *m.* *Attack.*
Imprōbitās, imprōbitātīs, *f.* *Wick-*
edness.
In, *prep. with acc. and abl.* *Into,*
in, within.
Incertūs, ā, ūm. *Uncertain.*
Indicō, indicērē, indixī, indictūm.
To declare.
Infestō, arē, avi, atūm. *To infest.*
Ingens, ingentīs. *Huge, large, great.*

Innocens, innocentīs. *Innocent.*
Insāniā, *ac, f.* *Insanity.*
Insulā, *ac, f.* *Island.*
Intēr, *prep. with acc.* *Between,*
among, in the midst of.
Intrō, arē, avi, atūm. *To enter.*
Inventōr, inventōrīs, *m.* *Inventor.*
Invitō, arē, avi, atūm. *To invite.*
Ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm. *Self, he, himself.*
See 186.
Is, eā, id. *That, he, she, it.*
Istē, istā, istūd. *That, such.* See 186.
Italiā, *ac, f.* *Italy.*

J.

Jaciō, jacerē, jeci, jactūm. *To cast,*
throw, hurl.
Jām, *adv.* *Now, already.*
Jucundūs, ā, ūm. *Delightful, pleas-*
ant.
Jūdex, jūdīcīs, *m. and f.* *Judge.*
Jungō, jungērē, junxī, junctūm. *To*
join.
Justitiā, *ac, f.* *Justice.*
Justūs, ā, ūm. *Upright, just.*
Jūvenīs, jūvenīs, *m. and f.* *A youth,*
young man.
Jūventūs, jūventūtīs, *f.* *Youth, a*
youth, a young person.

L.

Lābōr, lābōrīs, *m.* *Labor.*
Lābōrō, arē, avi, atūm. *To strive*
for, labor, work.
Lācēdaemōniūs, *ii, m.* *Spartan, a*
Spartan, inhabitant of Sparta in
Greece.
Laetitīā, *ac, f.* *Joy.*
Lāpis, lāpīdīs, *m.* *Stone.*
Lātīnē, *adv.* *In Latin.*
Lātīnūs, *i, m.* *Latinus, a Latin*
king.
Lātūs, ā, ūm. *Broad.*

Laudābilis, č. <i>Praiseworthy, laudable.</i>	Mensā, ac, f. <i>Table.</i>
Laudō, āre, āvi, ātūm. <i>To praise.</i>	Mensis, mensis, m. <i>Month.</i>
Laus, laudis, f. <i>Praise.</i>	Mercēs, mercēdis, f. <i>Reward.</i>
Lāvīniā, ac, f. <i>Lavinia, a proper name.</i>	Mēreō, mērēre, mēruī, mērītūm. <i>To deserve, merit.</i>
Lēgātīō, lēgātīōnis, f. <i>Embassy.</i>	Meūs, ā, ūm. <i>My. See 185.</i>
Lēgātūs, ī, m. <i>Ambassador.</i>	Milēs, militis, m. <i>Soldier.</i>
Lēgiō, lēgiōnis, f. <i>Legion, a body of soldiers.</i>	Miltiādēs, is, m. <i>Miltiades, an Athenian general.</i>
Lēgō, lēgēre, lēgi, lectūm. <i>To choose, appoint.</i>	Mōdestiā, ac, f. <i>Modesty.</i>
Leō, leōnis, m. <i>Lion.</i>	Mōneō, mōnēre, mōnuī, mōnītūm. <i>To advise.</i>
Lētālis, č. <i>Mortal, deadly.</i>	Mons, montis, m. <i>Mountain.</i>
Lex, legis, f. <i>Law.</i>	Monstrō, āre, āvi, ātūm. <i>To show, point out.</i>
Libēr, libri, m. <i>Book.</i>	Mōrā, ac, f. <i>Delay.</i>
Libērō, āre, āvi, ātūm. <i>To liberate.</i>	Mors, mortis, f. <i>Death.</i>
Libertās, libertātis, f. <i>Liberty.</i>	Multitūdō, multitudinis, f. <i>Multitude.</i>
Longūs, ā, ūm. <i>Long.</i>	Multūs, ā, ūm. <i>Much, many.</i>
Lūcus, ī, m. <i>Grove.</i>	Mundūs, ī, m. <i>World, universe.</i>
Lūnā, ac, f. <i>Moon.</i>	Mūniō, īre, īvi, itūm. <i>To fortify, defend.</i>
Luscīniā, ac, f. <i>Nightingale.</i>	Mūnūs, mūnēris, n. <i>Gift, present.</i>
Lux, lucis, f. <i>Light.</i>	Mūrūs, ī, m. <i>Wall.</i>
Luxuriā, ac, f. <i>Luxury.</i>	Mūtātiō, mūtātiōnis, f. <i>Change, phase.</i>
Lycurgūs, ī, m. <i>Lycurgus, a Spartan lawgiver.</i>	
Lysandēr, Lysandri, m. <i>Lysander, a Spartan general.</i>	

M.

Mācedōniā, ac, f. <i>Macedonia, Macedonia, a country of Northern Greece.</i>	N. <i>N.</i>
Māgistēr, māgistrī, m. <i>Master, teacher.</i>	Nātālis, č. <i>Belonging to one's birth, natal.</i>
Magnōpērē, adv. <i>Greatly.</i>	Nātālis diēs. <i>Birth-day.</i>
Magnūs, ā, ūm. <i>Great, large.</i>	Nātūrā, ac, f. <i>Nature.</i>
Mālūm, ī, n. <i>Evil.</i>	Nāvālis, č. <i>Naval.</i>
Marcellūs, ī, m. <i>Marcellus, a celebrated Roman general.</i>	Nāvīgō, āre, āvi, ātūm. <i>To sail to.</i>
Mārē, mārīs, n. <i>Sea.</i>	Nāvīs, nāvīs, f. <i>Ship.</i>
Mātēr, matrīs, f. <i>Mother.</i>	Nēcessāritis, ā, ūm. <i>Necessary.</i>
Mātūrūs, ā, ūm. <i>Ripe.</i>	Nēcessitās, nēcessitātis, f. <i>Necessity.</i>
Mēmōriā, ac, f. <i>Memory.</i>	Nēpōs, nēpōtis, m. <i>Grandson.</i>
	Nōbīlis, č. <i>Noble.</i>
	Nōmēn, nōmīnis, n. <i>Name.</i>
	Nōmīnō, āre, āvi, ātūm. <i>To call, name.</i>

Nōn, adv. Not.

Nonnē, interrog. part. Expects the answer, Yes. See 346, II., 2.

Nostēr, nostrā, nostrūm. Our, our own, ours.

Nōvītās, nōvītātis, f. Novelty.

Nōvūs, ū, ūm. New.

Nox, noctis, f. Night.

Nūbēs, nūbīs, f. Cloud.

Nām, interrog. part. Expects the answer, No. See 346, II., 1.

Nūmā, ac, m. Numa, a Roman king.

Nūmērūs, ī, m. Number, quantity.

Nummūs, ī, m. Money, a piece of money, a coin.

Nuntiō, āre, āvī, ātūm. To proclaim, announce.

O.

Obsē., obsidīs, m. and f. Hostage.

Occāsūs, ūs, m. Setting, going down.

Occūpō, āre, āvī, ātūm. To occupy, take possession of.

Octāvūs, ū, ūm. Eighth.

Octō. Eight. See 176.

Octūgintā. Eighty. See 176.

Oculūs, ī, m. Eye.

Odiōsūs, ū, ūm. Odious, hateful.

Omnis, ē. All, every, whole.

Oppidūm, ī, n. Town, city.

Oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātūm. To besiege, take by storm.

Optō, āre, āvī, ātūm. To wish for, desire.

Opulentūs, ū, ūm. Rich, opulent.

Opūs, ōpēris, n. Work.

Orātiō, ōrātiōnis, f. Oration, speech.

Orātōr, ōrātōris, m. Orator.

Orbīs, orbīs, m. Circle.

Orbīs terrārūm. The world.

Ornō, āre, āvī, ātūm. To adorn, be an ornament to.

Ovis, ōvis, f. Sheep.

P.

Pārens, pārentis, m. and f. Parent.

Pāreō, pārerē, pāruī, pāritūm. To obey.

Pars, partis, f. Part, portion.

Parvūs, ū, ūm. Small.

Passēr, passēris, m. Sparrow.

Pastōr, pastōris, m. Shepherd.

Pātēr, pātris, m. Father.

Pātriā, ac, f. Native country, country.

Paulūs, ī, m. Paulus, a Roman consul.

Pax, pācis, f. Peace.

Pēcūniā, ac, f. Money.

Pellis, pellis, f. Skin, hide.

Pēr, prep. with acc. Of, through.

Pērāgrō, āre, āvī, ātūm. To wander through.

Pēritūs, ū, ūm. Stilled in.

Persā, ac, m. A Persian.

Pēs, pēdis, m. Foot.

Philippūs, ī, m. Philip, king of Macedon.

Philōsōphiā, ac, f. Philosophy.

Philōsōphūs, ī, m. Philosopher.

Piētās, piētātis, f. Filial affection, piety, duty.

Pirātā, ac, m. Pirate.

Piscis, piscis, m. Fish.

Pisistrātūs, ī, m. Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.

Plāccō, plācērē, plācuī, plācītūm. To please.

Plēnūs, ū, ūm. Full.

Pocnūs, ū, ūm. Carthaginian.

Poenus, ī, m. A Carthaginian.

Pōmūm, ī, n. Fruit.

Pompiliūs, iī, m. Pompilius, a Roman name.

Pompēiūs, iī, m. Pompey, a celebrated Roman general.

Pondūs, pondēris, n. Weight, mass.

Portūs, ūs, *m.* *Port, harbor.*
 Post, *prep. with acc.* *After.*
 Pōtens, pōtentis. *Powerful, able.*
 Praebē, praebēre, praebui, praebitūm. *To show, furnish, give.*
 Praeceptōr, praeceptōris, *m.* *Teacher, instructor.*
 Praeceptūm, *i, n.* *Rule, precept.*
 Praeclārūs, ū, ūm. *Renowned, distinguished.*
 Praedicō, praedicēre, praedixi, praedictūm. *To predict, foretell.*
 Praemiūm, *ii, n.* *Reward.*
 Prātūm, *i, n.* *Meadow.*
 Prētiōsūs, ū, ūm. *Valuable.*
 Primūs, ū, ūm. *First.*
 Principiūm, *ii, n.* *Beginning.*
 Prō, *prep. with abl.* *In behalf of, for.*
 Proeliūm, *ii, n.* *Battle.*
 Prospere, *adv.* *Successfully.*
 Prōvōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To challenge.*
 Prudentiā, *ae, f.* *Prudence.*
 Publiūs, *ii, m.* *Publius, a Roman name.*
 Puellā, *ae, f.* *Girl.*
 Puēr, puēri, *m.* *Boy.*
 Pugnā, *ae, f.* *Battle.*
 Pugnō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To fight.*
 Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm. *Beautiful.*
 Pūnicūs, ū, ūm. *Carthaginian, Punic.*
 Pyrrhūs, *i, m.* *Pyrrhus, a king of Epirus.*

Q.

Quā, *conj.* *Than.*
 Quartūs, ū, ūm. *Fourth.*
 Quattuor. *Four.* See 176.
 Quī, quae, quod, *rel. pronoun.* *Who, which, what.* See 187.

Quinquāgintā. *Fifty.* See 176.
 Quinquē. *Five.* See 176.
 Quintūs, ū, ūm. *Fifth.*
 Quis, quae, quid? *interrog. pronoun.* *Who, which, what?* See 188.
 Quivīs, quaevis, quodvis, or quidvis, *indef. pronoun.* *Whoever, whatever.* See 190.
 Quōtidiānūs, ū, ūm. *Daily.*
 Quōtidiē, *adv.* *Daily.*

R.

Rāmūs, *i, m.* *Branch.*
 Ratiō, ratiōnis, *f.* *Reason.*
 Rectē, *adv.* *Rightly.*
 Rectūm, *i, n.* *Right, rectitude.*
 Rēducō, rēducēre, rēduxi, rēductūm. *To lead back.*
 Rēginā, *ae, f.* *Queen.*
 Rēgiō, rēgiōnis, *f.* *Region, territory.*
 Rēgūlus, *i, m.* *Regulus, a Roman general.*
 Regnō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To reign.*
 Regnūm, *i, n.* *Kingdom, royal authority.*
 Rēgō, rēgēre, rexī, rectūm. *To rule.*
 Rēnōvō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To renew.*
 Rēs, rei, *f.* *Thing, affair.*
 Rēs publicā. *Republic.*
 Rēvōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To recall.*
 Rex, rēgis, *m.* *King.*
 Rhēnūs, *i, m.* *Rhine.*
 Rōmā, *ae, f.* *Rome.*
 Rōmānūs, ū, ūm. *Roman.*
 Rōmānūs, *i, m.* *Roman, a Roman.*
 Rōmūlus, *i, m.* *Romulus, the founder of Rome.*

S.

Sāguntūm, *i, n.* *Saguntum, a town in Spain.*

- Sālūs, sālūtīs, *f.* *Safety.*
 Sālūtāris, ē. *Beneficial, salutary, advantageous.*
 Sālūtō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To salute.*
 Sanctūs, ū, ūm. *Holy, sacred.*
 Sāpiens, sāpientīs. *Wise.*
 Sāpientēr. *adv.* *Wisely.*
 Sāpientiā, ae, *f.* *Wisdom.*
 Schōlā, ae, *f.* *School.*
 Scientiā, ae, *f.* *Knowledge.*
 Scipiō, Scipiōnis, *m.* *Scipio, a distinguished Roman.*
 Scribō, scribērē, scripsī, scriptūm. *To write.*
 Scythae, arūm, *m. plur.* *The Scythians.*
 Sēcundūs, ū, ūm. *Second, favorable.*
 Sempēr, *adv.* *Always, ever.*
 Sēnātor, sēnātorīs, *m.* *Senator.*
 Sēnātūs, ūs, *m.* *Senate.*
 Sēnectūs, sēnectūtīs, *f.* *Old age.*
 Sensūs, ūs, *m.* *Feeling, perception, sense.*
 Sententiā, ae, *f.* *Opinion.*
 Sermō, sermōnis, *m.* *Discourse, conversation.*
 Serviō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To serve.*
 Serviūs, iī, *m.* *Servius, a Roman proper name.*
 Servō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To preserve, keep, save.*
 Servūs, i, *m.* *Slave.*
 Sex. *Six.* See 176.
 Siciliā, ae, *f.* *Sicily.*
 Silentiūm, iī, *n.* *Silence.*
 Sīmilis, ē. *Like.*
 Singulāris, ē. *Remarkable, singular.*
 Sōcēr, sōcērī, *m.* *Father-in-law.*
 Sōciūs, iī, *m.* *Ally, associate.*
 Sōcrātēs, īs, *m.* *Socrates, the celebrated Athenian philosopher.*
 Sōl, sōlis, *m.* *Sun.*
 Sōlōn, Sōlōnis, *m.* *Solon, an Athenian legislator.*
 Sōlūm, i, *n.* *Soil.*
 Spartā, ae, *f.* *Sparta, capital of Laconia.*
 Spēciēs, spēcīei, *f.* *Appearance.*
 Spērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To hope.*
 Spēs, spēcī, *f.* *Hope.*
 Spōliō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To rob, spoil, despoil.*
 Stīmulō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To stimulate.*
 Stultitiā, ae, *f.* *Folly.*
 Suī, sibi. *Himself, herself, itself.*
 See 184.
 Sūm, essē, fui. *To be.* See 204.
 Sūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To conquer.*
 Supplicium, iī, *n.* *Punishment.*
 Suūs, ū, ūm. *His, her, its, their, his own, her own, its own, their own.*
 Sŷracūsae, arūm, *f. plur.* *Syracuse, a city of Sicily.*

T.

- Tāceō, tācērē, tācuī, tācītūm. *To be silent.*
 Tārentūm, i, *n.* *Tarentum, an Italian town.*
 Tarquīniūs, iī, *m.* *Tarquin, a Roman king.*
 Tēlūm, i, *n.* *Javelin, weapon.*
 Tēmērītās, tēmērītātīs, *f.* *Rashness.*
 Templūm, i, *n.* *Temple.*
 Tempūs, tempōris, *n.* *Time.*
 Terrā, ae, *f.* *Land, earth.*
 Terreō, terrērē, terruī, terrītūm. *To frighten, terrify.*
 Tertiūs, ū, ūm. *Third.*
 Thālēs, īs, *m.* *Thales, a Grecian philosopher.*
 Thēbānūs, ū, ūm. *Theban, belonging to Thebes (a city in Greece).*

Thēbānūs, ī, m. *A Theban.*
 Thēmistōclēs, īs, m. *Themistocles, a celebrated Athenian.*
 Thrāsýbūlūs, ī, m. *Thrasylbulus, the liberator of Athens.*
 Ticinūs, ī, m. *Ticinus, a river of Cisalpine Gaul.*
 Trēs, triā. *Three. See 175.*
 Trīgintā. *Thirty. See 176.*
 Triumphō, āre, āvī, ātūm. *To triumph.*
 Trōjā, ac, f. *Troy, ancient city in Asia Minor.*
 Tū, tuī. *Thou, you. See 184.*
 Tullia, ae, f. *Tullia, a Roman proper name.*
 Tullās, ī, m. *Tullus, a Roman king.*
 Tūm, adv. *Then, at that time.*
 Turrīs, turrīs, f. *Tower.*
 Tuūs, ā, ūm. *Your, yours, thy, thine.*
 Tŷrannūs, ī, m. *Tyrani.*
 Tŷriūs, ā, ūm. *Tyrian.*

U.

Ulyssēs, īs, m. *Ulysses, a Grecian king.*
 Unīversūs, ā, ūm. *All, the whole, entire.*
 Unūs, ā, ūm. *One. See 175.*
 Urbs, urbīs, f. *City.*
 Usūs, ūs, m. *Use.*
 Utīlis, ē. *Useful.*

V.

Vālētūdō, vālētūdīnīs, f. *Health.*
 Vāriētās, vāriētātīs, f. *Variety.*
 Vāriūs, ā, ūm. *Various.*
 Varrō, varrōnīs, m. *Varro, a Roman consul.*
 Vēr, vēris, n. *Spring.*
 Verbūm, ī, n. *Word.*

Vērēcundiā, ac, f. *Modesty.*
 Vērītās, vēritātīs, f. *Truth, verity.*
 Vērūs, ā, ūm. *True, real.*
 Vē-tūm, ī, n. *Truth.*
 Vestr, vestrā, vestrūm. *Your.*
 Vestīō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To clothe.*
 Viā, ae, f. *Way, road.*
 Victōr, victōrīs, m. *Victor, conqueror.*
 Victōriā, ae, f. *Victory.*
 Victōriā, ac, f. *Victoria, Queen of England.*
 Vīgīlō, āre, āvī, ātūm. *To watch, be awake.*
 Vīlis, ē. *Cheap.*
 Vindex, vindicēs, m. and f. *Vindictor, avenger.*
 Viōlō, āre, āvī, ātūm. *To violate.*
 Vīr, vīrī, m. *Man, hero, soldier.*
 Virgō, virgīnīs, f. *Maiden, girl.*
 Virtūs, virtūtīs, f. *Valor, virtue.*
 Vitā, ac, f. *Life.*
 Vitiūm, ī, n. *Fault, vice.*
 Vitūpērō, āre, āvī, ātūm. *To find fault with, censure, blame.*
 Vivō, vivērē, vixī, victūm. *To live, reside.*
 Vōcō, āre, āvī, ātūm. *To call.*
 Vōlō, āre, āvī, ātūm. *To fly.*
 Vōluntāriūs, ā, ūm. *Voluntary.*
 Vōluptās, vōluptātīs, f. *Pleasure.*
 Vox, vōcīs, f. *Voice.*
 Vulnērō, āre, āvī, ātūm. *To wound.*
 Vulnūs, vulnērīs, n. *Wound.*
 Vultūr, vultūrīs, m. *Vulture.*
 Vultūs, ūs, m. *Countenance.*

X.

Xerxēs, īs, m. *Xerxes, a Persian king.*

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

- A, an.** *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article. See p. 12, note 1.*
- Acceptable.** *Grātūs, ā, ūm.*
- Admonish.** *Admōneš, admōnērē, admōnui, admōnttūm.*
- Adorned.** *Ornā'ūs, ā, ūm.*
- Advise.** *Mōneš, mōnērē, mōnui, mōnttūm.*
- After.** *Post, prep. with acc.*
- Against.** *Contrā, prep. with acc. Sometimes denoted by the Dative.*
- Alexander.** *Alexandēr, Alexandrī, m.*
- All.** *Omnīs, ē.*
- Always.** *Sempēr, adv.*
- Announce.** *Nuntiō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
- Appoint.** *Creō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
- Army.** *Exercitūs, ūs, m.*
- Arrival.** *Adventūs, ūs, m.*
- At.** *Denoted by the Ablative of Place, or of Time. See 421 and 426.*
- Athenian.** *Athēniēns, ē.*
- Athenian, an Athenian.** *Athēniēns, is, m. and f.*
- Athens.** *Athēnāe, ārūm, f. plur.*
- Attack.** *Impetūs, ūs, m.*
- Await.** *Expectō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*

B.

- Battle.** *Proeliūm, ū, n.*
- Battle-array.** *Acies, eī, f.*
- Be.** *Sūm, esse, fui.*

- Be silent.** *Taceō, tacēre, tacui, tacitūm.*
- Beautiful.** *Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm.*
- Before.** *Antē, prep. with acc.*
- Bird.** *Avīs, ūvis, f.*
- Birth-day.** *Nātālīs diēs, m.*
- Blame.** *Vitūpērō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
- Book.** *Liber, librī, m.*
- Boy.** *Puer, puērī, m.*
- Brave.** *Fortis, ē.*
- Bravely.** *Fortitēr, adv.*
- Bravery.** *Virtūs, virtūtis, f.*
- Bring to a close.** *Finiō, ire, iui, itūm.*
- Brother.** *Frāter, frātēs, m.*
- Brutus.** *Brūtus, ī, m.*
- By.** *A, ab, prep. with abl. Often denoted by the Ablative alone. See 414.*

C.

- Caius.** *Caiūs, ū, m.*
- Call.** *Vocō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
- Camillus.** *Cāmillūs, ī, m.*
- Campanian, of Campania.** *Campānūs, ā, ūm.*
- Carthage.** *Carthāgō, Carthāgōnis, f.*
- Carthaginian.** *Carthāgōniēns, ē.*
- Carthaginian, a Carthaginian.** *Carthāgōniēns, is, m. and f.*
- Cato.** *Cātō, Cātōnis, m.*
- Cicero.** *Cicēō, Cicēronis, m.*

Citizen. *Civis, civis*, m. and f.

City. *Urbs, urbis*, f.

Cloud. *Nubēs, nubis*, f.

Commander. *Impērātor, impērātōris*, m.

Concerning. *Dē*, prep. with abl.

Consul. *Consul, consulis*, m.

Contrary to. *Contrā*, prep. with acc.

Conversation. *Sermō, sermonis*, m.

Corinth. *Cōrīnthiūs, i*, f.

Corinthian. *Cōrīnthiūs, ā, ūm*.

Corinthian, a Corinthian. *Cōrīnthiūs, ū, m*.

Cornelius. *Cornēliūs, ū, m*.

Correct. *Corrīgō, corrīgērē, corrēxi, correctum*.

Country. *Pātriā, ae*, f.

Courage. *Virtūs, virtutis*, f.

Crown. *Cōrōnā, ae*, f.

D.

Daily. *Quōtidianūs, ā, ūm*.

Daughter. *Filiā, ae*, f.

Day. *Diēs, diēi*, m. See 120, note.

Dear. *Cārūs, ā, ūm*.

Declare. *Indicō, indicērē, indicī, indictum*.

Delight. *Dēlectō, arē, avī, atum*.

Desirous of. *Cūpidūs, ā, ūm; avīdūs, ā, ūm*.

Did. Often the sign of the Imperfect, or of the Perfect tense, especially in questions.

Diligence. *Diligentiā, ae*, f.

Diligent. *Diligens, diligentis*.

Do. Often the sign of the Present tense, especially in questions.

E.

Eight. *Octō*. See 176.

Eighth. *Octāvūs, ā, ūm*.

Enemy. *Hostis, hostis*, m. and f.

Exercise. *Exerceō, exercērē, exercui, exercitum*.

Exile. *Exsul, exsulis*, m. and f.

Expect. *Erspectō, arē, avī, atum*.

F.

Father. *Pātēr, patrīs*, m.

Father-in-law. *Sōcēr, socērī*, m.

Fertile. *Fertilis, ē*.

Fidelity. *Fidēs, fidēi*, f.

Field. *Agēr, agrī*, m.

Fifth. *Quintūs, ū, ūm*.

Fifty. *Quinquagintā*. See 176.

Fight. *Pugnō, are, avī, atum*.

Finish. *Finio, ire, ivi, itum*.

Five. *Quinquē*. See 176.

Flee. *Fugio, fugērē, fugi, fugitum*.

Flower. *Flōs, flōris*, m.

Fly. *Volo, arē, avī, atum*.

Foot. *Pēs, pedis*, m.

Fond of. *Amans, amantis*.

For. *Pro*, prep. with abl. In the sense of *because of*, it is denoted by the Ablative alone (414); and in the sense of *for the benefit of*, by the Dative (384).

Fortify. *Munio, ire, ivi, itum*.

Four. *Quattuor*. See 176.

Fourth. *Quartūs, ū, ūm*.

Friend. *Amicus, i*, m.

Friendship. *Amicitia, ae*, f.

From. *A, ab*, prep. with abl.

Fruit. *Fructus, ūs*, m.

G.

Garden. *Hortus, i*, m.

Gaul. *Gallus, i*, m.

Gem. *Gemmā, ae*, f.

General. *Dux, ducts*, m. and f.

Gift. *Dōnum, i*, n.

Glory. *Gloria, ae*, f.

Gold. *Aurum, i*, n.

Golden. *Aureus, ā, ūm*.

Good. *Bōnūs, ā, ūm.*
 Goodness. *Bōnitās, bōnitātis, f.*
 Govern. *Rējō, rējērē, rexī, rectum.*
 Great. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*
 Greece. *Graeciā, ae, f.*
 Grove. *Lūcūs, ī, m.*
 Guard. *Custōdiō, irē, ivi, ūm.*

H.

Had. *Often the sign of the Pluperfect tense.*
 Hannibal. *Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, m.*
 Happy. *Beātūs, ā, ūm.*
 Have. *Hābeō, hābērē, hābuī, hābitūm.*
 Sometimes simply the sign of the Perfect tense; as, we have loved.
 He, she, it. *Is, eā, id; illē, illā, illūd.* The pronoun is often implied in the ending of the verb.
 He himself. *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm.*
 Hear. *Audiō, irē, ivi, ūm.*
 High. *Altūs, altā, altūm.*
 Himself. *Sui (184); ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm.*
 His. *Suūs, ā, ūm.*
 Hope (verb). *Spērō, arē, avi, atūm.*
 Hope (noun). *Spēs, spēi, f.*
 Hour. *Hōrā, ae, f.*
 Hundred. *Centūm.* See 176.

I.

I. *Egō, meī.* See 184.
 In. *In, prep. with abl.*
 In behalf of. *Prō, prep. with abl.*
 Instruct. *Erūdiō, irē, ivi, ūm.*
 Instructor. *Praeceptōr, praeceptōris, m.*
 Into. *In, prep. with acc.*
 Invite. *Invitō, arē, avi, atūm.*
 Iron. *Ferrūm, ī, n.*
 Island. *Insulā, ae, f.*
 It. See *he, she, it.*
 Italy. *Italiā, ae, f.*

J.

Judge. *Jūdex, jūdētis, m. and f.*
 Justice. *Iustitiā, ae, f.*

K.

Keep one's word. *Fidēm servārē.*
 See p. 74, note 4.
 Kindly. *Bēnignē, adv.*
 King. *Rex, rēgis, m.*
 Knowledge. *Scientiā, ae, f.*

L.

Large. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*
 Latinus. *Lātīnūs, ī, m.*
 Lavinia. *Lāvīniā, ae, f.*
 Law. *Lex, lēgis, f.*
 Lead. *Ducō, ducērē, duxī, ductūm.*
 Lead back. *Rēducō, rēducērē, rēduxī, rēductūm.*
 Lead forth. *Educō, educērē, eduxī, eductūm.*
 Let. *Render by the Subjunctive.* See 196, I., 2.
 Leader. *Dux, dūctis, m. and f.*
 Letter. *Epistolā, ae, f.*
 Liberate. *Libērō, arē, avi, atūm.*
 Life. *Vitā, ae, f.*
 Like. *Similis, ē.*
 Love. *Amō, arē, avi, atūm.*

M.

Macedonia. *Mācedōniā, ae, f.*
 Man. *Homō, homīnis, m. Vir, viri, m.* The latter is used as a term of respect; a true or worthy man, a hero.
 Many. *Multi, ae, ā, plur.*
 May. *A sign of the Present Subjunctive.*
 May have. *A sign of the Perfect Subjunctive.*
 Me. See I.
 Memory. *Mēmōriā, ae, f.*

- Might, would, should. *Signs of the Imperfect Subjunctive.*
- Might have, would have, should have. *Signs of the Pluperfect Subjunctive.*
- Mind. *Animūs, i, m.*
- Moat. *Fossā, ae, f.*
- Money. *Pēcūniā, ae, f.*
- Month. *Mensis, mensis, m.*
- More. *Sign of the Comparative degree.* See 160.
- Most. *Sign of the Superlative degree.* See 160.
- Mound. *Aggēr, aggēris, m.*
- Mountain. *Mons, montis, m.*
- Much. *Multū, adv.*
- My. *Meūs, ā, ūm.* See 185.
- N.**
- Name. *Nōmēn, nōmīnis, n.*
- Nightingale. *Luscīniā, ae, f.*
- Noble. *Nōbilitas, ē.*
- Not. *Nōn, adv.* Interrogative, *nonnē.*
- O.**
- Obey. *Pāreō, pārērē, pārui, pārūtū.*
- Observe. *Servō, āre, āvi, ātū.*
- Occupy. *Occūpō, āre, āvi, ātū.*
- Of. *Denoted by the Genitive.* See 393.
- Of itself. *Pēr sē.*
- On. *Often denoted by the Ablative of Time.* See 426.
- One. *Unūs, ā, ūm.* See 175.
- Oration. *Orātiō, orātiōnis, f.*
- Orator. *Orātor, orātoris, m.*
- Our. *Nostēr, trā, trūm.*
- P.**
- Parent. *Pārens, pārentis, m. and f.*
- Philip. *Philippūs, i, m.*
- Pisistratus. *Pisistrātūs, i, m.*
- Please. *Plāceō, plācērē, plācuī, plācītū.*
- Pleasing. *Grātūs, ā, ūm.*
- Pleasure. *Vōluptās, vōluptātis, f.*
- Plough. *Arō, ārārē, ārāvi, ārātū.*
- Plunder (verb). *Spōliō, āre, āvi, ātū.*
- Practise. *Exerceō, exercērē, exercuī, exercītū; cōlō, cōlērē, cōluī, cultū.*
- Praise (verb). *Laudō, āre, āvi, ātū.*
- Praise (noun). *Laus, laudis, f.*
- Precept. *Praeceptū, i, n.*
- Predict. *Praedicō, praedicērē, praedixī, praedictū.*
- Present (noun). *Dōnū, i, n.*
- Publius. *Publius, i, m.*
- Punish. *Pūniō, īre, īvi, ītū.*
- Pupil. *Discipulus, i, m.*
- Put to flight. *Fūgō, āre, āvi, ātū.*
- Q.**
- Queen. *Rēgīnā, ae, f.*
- R.**
- Receive. *Accipio, accipērē, accēpi, acceptū.*
- Reign, royal authority. *Regnū, i, n.*
- Renowned. *Clārus, ā, ūm.*
- Reside. *Hābitō, āre, āvi, ātū.*
- Rhine. *Rhēnūs, i, m.*
- River. *Amnis, amnis, m.*
- Roman. *Rōmānis, ā, ūm.*
- Roman, a Roman. *Rōmānūs, i, m.*
- Rome. *Rōma, ae, f.*
- Romulus. *Rōmulus, i, m.*
- Re. *Rēgō, rēgērē, rex, rectū.*
- S.**
- Safety. *Sālūs, sālūtis, f.*
- Same. *Idēm, eādēm, illēm.* See 186.
- Say. *Dicō, dicērē, dixī, dictū.*

Save. *Servō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
Scipio. *Scipiō, m.*
Senator. *Sēnātor, sēnātoris, m.*
Serve. *Serviō, īre, īvi, itūm.*
Servius. *Serviūs, ū, m.*
Setting. *Occāsūs, ūs, m.*
Shall, will. *Signs of the Future tense.*
Shall have, will have. *Signs of the Future Perfect tense.*
Shepherd. *Pastōr, pastōris, m.*
Should, should have. *See might, might have.*
Show. *Monstrō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
Sicily. *Siciliā, ae, f.*
Silent. *See be silent.*
Silver. *Argentūm, ī, n.*
Sing. *Cantō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
Singing, a song. *Cantūs, ūs, m.*
Six. *Sex* See 176.
Slave. *Serviūs, ī, m.*
Sleep. *Dormiō, īre, īvi, itūm.*
Soldier. *Milēs, militis, m.*
Somebody, some one. *Aliquīs, aliquis, or aliquod.* See 191.
Son. *Filiūs, ū, m.*
Son-in law. *Gēnēr, gēnērī, m.*
Song. *Carmēn, carminis, n.*
Speak. *Dicō, dicere, dixi, dictūm.*
State. *Civitas, civitatis, f.*
Strengthen. *Firmō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
Sun. *Sol, solis, m.*
Sunset. *Occāsūs solis.*
Sword. *Gladius, ū, m.*

T.

Take. *Capiō, capere, cepi, captūm.*
Take by storm. *Expugnō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
Tarquin. *Tarquiniūs, ū, m.*
Tell. *Dicō, dicere, dixi, dictūm.*
Temple. *Templūm, ī, n.*

Ten. *Dēcēm.* See 176.
Terrify. *Terreō, terrere, terrui, territūm.*
Than. *Quām.* Often omitted, in which case the Ablative follows. See 417.
That. *Illē, illā, illud.* See 186.
The. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* See p. 12, note 1.
Their. *Suūs, ā, ūm.*
Then. *Tūm, adv.*
Thing. *Rēs, rei, f.*
This. *Hic, haec, hoc.* See 186.
Three. *Trēs, tria.* See 175.
Time. *Tempūs, temporis, n.*
To. *Ad, in,* preps. with acc. *To* is sometimes denoted by the Accusative, and sometimes by the Dative. See 379 and 384.
True. *Vērūs, ā, ūm.*
Truth. *Vērūm, ī, n.*
Tullia. *Tulliā, ae, f.*
Two. *Duō, duae, duō.* See 175.
Tyrant. *Tyrannūs, ī, m.*

U.

Use. *Usus, ūs, m.*
Useful. *Utilis, ē.*

V.

Valor. *Virtūs, virtutis, f.*
Valuable. *Prētiōsūs, ā, ūm.*
Very. *Sometimes the sign of the Superlative.* See 160.
Victoria. *Victoriā, ae, f.*
Victory. *Victoriā, ae, f.*
Violate. *Viō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
Virtue. *Virtūs, virtutis, f.*

W.

Walk. *Ambulō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*
War. *Bellūm, ī, n.*

Way. *Via*, ae, f.
 Well. *Bene*, adv.
 Who, which (relative). *Qui*, *quae*,
quod. See 187.
 Who, which, what (interrogative)?
Quis, *quae*, *quid*? *qui*, *quae*, *quod*?
 See 188.
 Wide. *Latus*, *ā*, *um*.
 Wife. *Conjux*, *conjugis*, f.
 Will, will have. See *shall*, *shall*
have.
 Winter. *Hibernia*, *hibernis*, f.
 Wisdom. *Sapientia*, ae, f.
 Wise. *Sapiens*, *sapientis*.
 With. *Cum*, prep. with abl. Often
 denoted by the Ablative alone.
 See 414.

Word. *Verbum*, *i*, n. To keep one's
 word, *fidem servare*. See p. 74,
 note 4.

Would, would have. See *might*,
might have.

Wound. *Vulnero*, *are*, *avi*, *atum*.

Write. *Scribo*, *scribere*, *scripsi*, *scrip-*
tum.

Y.

Year. *Annus*, *i*, m.

You. *Tu*, *tui*. See 184.

Your. *Tuus*, *ā*, *um*; *vester*, *vestra*,
vestrum.

Yourself. *Tu*, *tū ipse*.

Words that have ubus in the 3rd pers. Plu.
 in the 4th Dec.

ancus = needle

arcus = bow

Quercus = oak-tree

Tribus = tribes.

See nouns of 4th Dec.

cornu = horn, *genu* = knee, *veru* = spit.

Words in 3rd of the 5th Dec. that have
 the N. & V. cases in the plural.

Fides = word.

res = thing

spes = hope.

plebs = the common people

portus = a harbor.

veru = spit.

lacus = lake-m.

specus = cave

artus = joint.

Dic. I. all the nouns are fem with the except-
ion of those nouns that denote the occu-
pation of men & dama = a m. dol.
talpa = a mole, Adriatic m. = Adriatic.
which are m. & the names rivers.

Dic. II are mas. except virus = poison
Pelagus the sea which are neu & vulgus
the common people is sometimes m & f.

Caesar - Dec. p. III ch. 20-36
" " IV ch. 8-23.

b. Plu.

spit.

have

und.

a people

